

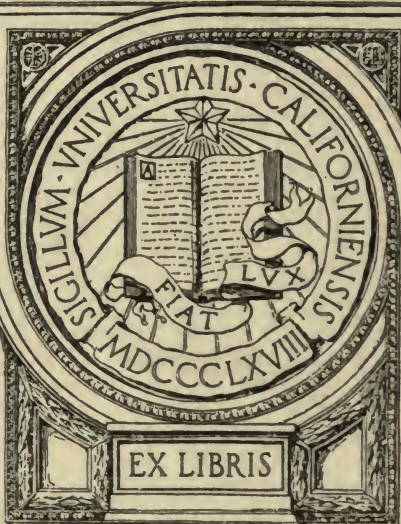
UC-NRLF



\$B 290 690



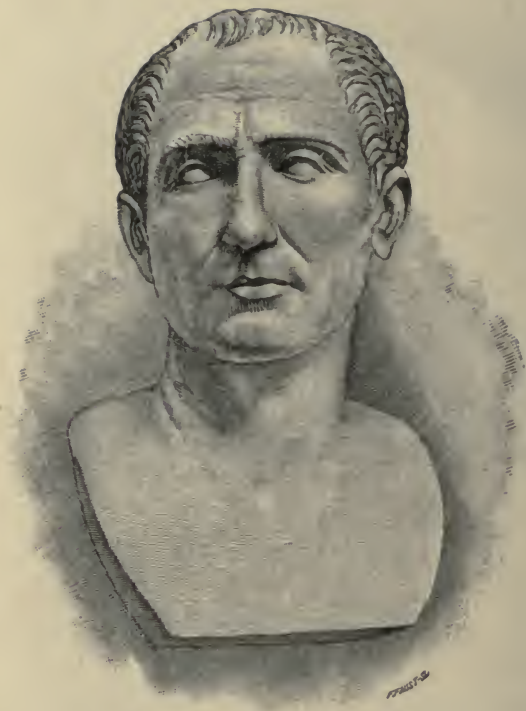
GIFT OF
President's Office



760
M 681



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



BUST OF JULIUS CAESAR.

ELEMENTS OF LATIN

BY

BENJAMIN W. MITCHELL, Ph.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND HEAD OF DEPARTMENT OF ANCIENT AND
MODERN LANGUAGES, CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL,
PHILADELPHIA



HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE
New York Philadelphia

President's Office

Copyright, 1912, by
HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE

TO THE
LIBRARY OF
CONGRESS

PREFACE

SEMI-ANNUAL admission of pupils, now so general in secondary schools, seems to require a text-book in Latin which shall naturally divide into two fairly complete and independent portions. It is to meet this need that the present work is primarily designed. By the plan herein followed, the pupil will have mastered by the mid-year the forms of inflection and a few elementary principles of the simple sentence. In the second part the principles of syntax suited to first-year work are thoroughly treated, so that by the end of the year adequate equipment will have been gained for the reading of Caesar's *Gallic War*. No other work so fulfils all the requirements of second-year study—purity of diction, plainness of narrative style, interest of subject matter—as this wonderful man's account of the stupendous achievement by which he determined the development of civilization in Western Europe, and hence, largely, our own. To accustom the pupils to Caesar's style nearly all the sentences, except those in the earliest exercises, are taken with slight variation from Caesar's own story, and chiefly from the first book.

The number of words in the working vocabulary is under 750, and they are those most frequently employed by Caesar in the *Gallic War*.

The words given in each of the earlier vocabularies are used frequently in succeeding exercises to familiarize the student with them and to give facility in their use. For this reason extreme brevity has not been aimed at in the sentences, though they are extremely simple in construction. The sentences can thus be made to mean something to the pupil,

and a long and tiresome succession of unrelated fragments of discourse is avoided.

Practice in connected reading is secured by the simplified text of the Helvetian Campaign from the first book of the *Gallic War*; and in this portion of the work the student will meet again many of the sentences with which he became acquainted in the preceding exercises, so that he will not feel himself altogether a stranger in a strange land.

The illustrations, drawn from the common sources, are designed to give interesting information as to military equipment, coinage, life and customs in general. They are frankly miscellaneous and not limited to text-illustration. The photographs of scenes of the Helvetian campaign were made by Professor George R. Swain, of Rockport, Illinois, and are used by his permission.

The author gratefully acknowledges valuable suggestions made by his colleagues in the Central High School: especially does he desire to express his thanks for the painstaking care with which Professors Samuel E. Berger, Francis H. Lee, and Ellis A. Schnabel examined and corrected the manuscript.

BENJAMIN W. MITCHELL.

CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL,
PHILADELPHIA, PA., 1911.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
I.—Sounds, Quantity, Accent.....	1
II.—Parts of Speech. Inflection. The Verb.....	5
III.—The Noun.....	9
IV.—The First Declension. The Sentence.....	12
V.—The Second Declension.....	16
VI.—The Second Declension (Continued).....	18
VII.—The Verb sum . Modifiers.....	21
VIII.—The Adjective.....	24
IX.—The Adjective (Continued).....	27
X.—The Verb.....	29
XI.—The Verb (Continued).....	30
XII.—The Third Declension. Consonant Stems.....	33
XIII.—The Third Declension (Continued).....	36
XIV.—The Third Declension (Continued).....	39
XV.—The Third Declension. <i>i</i> stems.....	41
XVI.—The Fourth and Fifth Declensions.....	45
XVII.—Irregular Adjectives.....	48
XVIII.—Adjectives of the Third Declension.....	50
XIX.—The Verb.....	55
XX.—Comparison.....	57
XXI.—Comparison (Continued).....	60
XXII.—Adverbs.....	63
XXIII.—Numerals.....	66
XXIV.—Pronouns.....	69
XXV.—Pronouns (Continued).....	74
XXVI.—Pronouns (Continued).....	78
XXVII.—Pronouns (Continued).....	81
XXVIII.—The Perfect System. Indicative Mode of amō	84
XXIX.—Conjugation of the Active Voice of amō completed..	89
XXX.—The Verb sum	94
XXXI.—The Passive Voice.....	96
XXXII.—Introduction to the Subjunctive as a Dependent Mode..	101
XXXIII.—Second Conjugation, Active Voice.....	104
XXXIV.—Second Conjugation, Passive Voice.....	108
XXXV.—Third Conjugation, Active Voice.....	111
XXXVI.—Third Conjugation, Passive Voice.....	114

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVII.—Fourth Conjugation.....	117
XXXVIII.—Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.....	121
XXXIX.—Deponent and Semi-deponent Verbs.....	125
XL.—Periphrastic Conjugation.....	130
XLI.—Irregular Verbs: The Compounds of <i>sum</i>	134
XLII.—Irregular Verbs: <i>ferō</i>	138
XLIII.—Irregular verbs: <i>eō</i>	141
XLIV.—Irregular Verbs: <i>fiō</i> and the Preteritives.....	144
XLV.—Irregular Verbs: <i>volō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> , <i>mālō</i>	148
XLVI.—Irregular verbs: Impersonals.....	151
XLVII.—Syntax. The Nominative and Accusative.....	155
XLVIII.—The Accusative (Continued).....	158
XLIX.—The Dative.....	161
L.—The Dative (Continued).....	164
LI.—The Dative (Continued).....	166
LII.—The Genitive.....	168
LIII.—The Genitive (Continued).....	171
LIV.—The Ablative.....	174
LV.—The Ablative (Continued).....	176
LVI.—The Ablative (Continued).....	178
LVII.—The Ablative (Continued).....	180
LVIII.—The Ablative (Continued).....	182
LIX.—The Ablative (Continued).....	184
LX.—The Ablative (Continued).....	187
LXI.—Syntax of Adjectives and Pronouns. Correlation..	191
LXII.—Syntax of the Verb in Principal Clauses.....	194
LXIII.—Syntax of the Infinitive.....	196
LXIV.—Syntax of the Gerund and Gerundive, and of the Supine.....	198
LXV.—Dependent Clauses. Clauses of Purpose.....	201
LXVI.—Dependent Clauses. Clauses of Purpose (Continued)	204
LXVII.—Dependent Clauses. Clauses of Result.....	206
LXVIII.—Dependent Clauses. Clauses of Apposition; Doubt, Hindrance, Prevention, and Refusal; Fear.....	209
LXIX.—Dependent Clauses. Temporal Clauses.....	212
LXX.—Dependent Clauses. Causal and Concessive Clauses.	215
LXXI.—Dependent Clauses. Conditional Sentences.....	218
LXXII.—Dependent Clauses. Conditional Sentences (Con- tinued).....	220
LXXIII.—Indirect Discourse— <i>Ōrātiō Obliqua</i>	223
LXXIV.—Indirect Discourse. Indirect Questions.....	227
LXXV.—Relative Sentences.....	229

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative.
abs. = absolute.
acc. = accusative.
adj. = adjective.
agt. = agent.
appos. = appositive.

card. = cardinal.
cf. (**confer**) = compare.
char. = characteristic.
cl. = clause.
coll. = collective.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjugation.
conj. = conjunction.
corr. = correlative.
cpd. = compound.

dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
deg. = degree.
dep. = deponent.
diff. = difference.
dir. = direct.
disc. = discourse.

f. or fem. = feminine.

gen. = genitive.

imp. = imperfect.
impers. = impersonal.
imv. = imperative.
ind. = indirect.
indecl. = indeclinable.
inf. = infinitive.
intr. = intransitive.
irreg. = irregular.

lit. = literally.
loc. = locative.

m. = masculine.

n., neut. = neuter.
num. = numeral.

obj. = object.
ord. = ordinal.

pass. = passive.
pf., perf. = perfect.
plp. = pluperfect.
pred. = predicate.
prep. = preposition.
pret. = preteritive.
pron. = pronoun.
ptc. = participle.
purp. = purpose.

qual. = quality.

rel. = relative.

sc. = **scilicet**, *i. e.*, supply.
subj. = subject.
subjunc. = subjunctive.

tr. = transitive.

vb. = verb.
voc. = vocative.

w. = with.

ELEMENTS OF LATIN.

PART I.

FORM.

LESSON I.

SOUNDS. QUANTITY. ACCENT.

1. **The Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet contains all the letters of the English alphabet except **w**: **k** is rare, and the same character, **i**, generally is used for both **i** and **j**: **j** is often called the consonant **i**.

2. **Classification of the Letters.**—**a, e, i, o, u, y** are called vowels. The other letters are called consonants. The union of two vowels in one sound is called a diphthong.

3. The letters of the alphabet are classified in the following—

ALPHABETICAL TABLE.

THE LATIN ALPHABET.	I. Vowels.— a, e, i, o, u, y.			
	II. Consonants..	{	1. Mutes... (Letters with stopped sound)	(a) Labial p (Lip letters)
				(b) Lingual ... t (Tongue letters)
				(c) Palatal.... c, k, q (Throat letters)
				2. Liquids l, r (n) (Flow letters)
			3. Nasals... (Nose letters)	(a) Labial m
				(b) Lingual.... n
				(c) Palatal.... (nc), (ng)
			4. Spirants... (Breathed letters)	(a) Labial f
				(b) Lingual ... s
				(c) Palatal.... h
			5. Semi-vowels..... i, v	
			6. Double consonants x, z	

4. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

(a) Pronunciation of the Vowels:

a = a in *father*.e = e in *they*.i = i in *machine*.o = o in *bone*.u = oo in *moon*.

y = the German ü, or the French û. The exact sound does not occur in English, but approximates i as above given.

(b) Pronunciation of the Diphthongs:

ae = ai in *aisle*.oe = oy in *boy*.au = ou in *our*.ei = ei in *feint*.eu = eu in *feud*.ui = *we*.ua = wa in *war*.

(c) Pronunciation of the Consonants:

The consonants are pronounced as in English, except that—

b before s or t has the sound of p.

c is always hard, as in *cat*.g is always hard, as in *go*.s always as in *so*, never as in *rose*.t always as in *to*, never as in *action*.

v is sounded like w.

ch, ph, th, practically like c, p, t: compare ch in *chord*.

Consonant i (j) is sounded like y in *yet*. No fixed rules can be given for the detection of consonant i; but i is usually consonant when initial followed by a vowel.

In the combinations qu, ngu followed by a vowel, and su followed by a and sometimes by e, u has the sound of w; e. g., *quid*, pronounced as in English; *pinguis*, pronounced *pingweess*; *suâsum*, pronounced *swasum*.

5.

QUANTITY.

The Quantity of a vowel or syllable means the length of time occupied in pronouncing.

Rule.—Every vowel has two sounds, long and short, differing from each other only in duration of time.

The following words, pronounced as accented, approximately illustrate both sounds of the vowels a, e, i, o, u, the short sound preceding in each case:

papá.

entaíl.

redéem.

foregó.

footstóol.

Notes.—1. Sometimes a vowel may be sounded either long or short; it is then called common. 2. A long vowel is marked with a dash above it, thus: *ā*. Short vowels usually are not marked; but sometimes thus: *ă*; and common vowels thus: *ǣ*.

6. RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. Vowel Quantity.

1. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *dĭes*, *nĭhil*.
2. A vowel is long when formed by *contraction* (i. e., the union of two vowels into one): *nīl* for *nĭhil*.
3. A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, and consonant *i*: *īnfāns*, *ēius*.
4. A vowel is short before *nt*, *nd*: *amant*, *amandus*.
5. All diphthongs are long: *portāē*.

II. Syllable Quantity.

Syllables in general have the same quantity as the vowel they contain, but the nature and arrangement of consonants in a syllable often prolong its sound beyond the time required for its vowel alone. Such syllables are said to be long by position.

1. **Position Rule.**—A syllable whose vowel may be naturally short becomes long by position if its vowel is followed by *x*, *z*, or any two or more consonants except a mute followed by *l* or *r*. In this latter case the syllable may be either long or short.

2. Final syllables ending in any single consonant except *c* and *s* are short: *amăt*.

7. SYLLABLES.

Latin words have a syllable for each vowel or diphthong, except that *u* following *q* always, and sometimes following *ng* and *s*, does not rank as a separate vowel, being a mere aftersound.

The final syllable of a word is called the **ultima**; the next before it, the **penult**; and the next preceding, the **antepenult**.

8.

ACCENT.

1. The accent of Latin words depends on the penult syllable. Words of two syllables accent the penult. 2. Words of three or more syllables accent the penult if long, otherwise the antepenult is accented.



Roman legionaries on the march (Relief from Column of Trajan). The helmet is swung from the right shoulder; the blankets and kit are carried on pole over the left shoulder.

LESSON II.

PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLECTION. THE VERB.

9. The parts of speech in Latin are the verb, noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection. The Latin has no article; the definite and indefinite articles must be supplied wherever needed in translating. Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are frequently grouped under the name of particles.

10. INFLECTION.

In English we generally show the relation of one word to another, and changes of number, person, time, and mode in verbs, by means of other words, such as prepositions, pronouns, and the auxiliary verbs. In Latin these relations and changes are shown by means of changes in the form of the words themselves, occurring chiefly at the end.

This change of form to express change of relation is called inflection.

(a) Inflection applied to verbs is called conjugation.

(b) Inflection applied to nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called declension.

(c) The other parts of speech are not inflected.

THE VERB.

11. A verb expresses action or being, e. g.:

amāre, to love; amārī, to be loved; vocō, I call; vocātur, he is called; esse, to be; sunt, they are.

12. Verbs have voice, mode, tense, number, person, as in English.

13. **Finite** forms of the verb are those which are limited (Latin *fīnis, a limit*) by requirements of **time, person, and number.**

14. (a) There are two voices, active and passive. The active voice represents the subject as acting: **vocat**, *he calls*. The passive voice represents the subject as acted on: **vocātur**, *he is called*.

(b) There are three finite modes: indicative, subjunctive, imperative. Of these, the indicative asserts or asks about a fact and the imperative expresses a command, *e. g.*:

laudat, *he praises*; **quis laudat**, *who praises?* **eum laudā**, *praise him*.

The subjunctive will be defined later.

(c) The tenses define the time of the action. There are six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.

(d) There are two numbers and three persons, as in English.

15. The chief non-finite part of the verb is the infinitive. It expresses the action of the verb without regard to person and number, *e. g.*:

to love; to have praised; I wish to go; he is said to have called.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

16. Verbs are formed of three elements, **stems**, **tense signs**, **personal endings**.

17. **Stems**.—The stem is that element to which the tense signs and personal endings are added in order to form any part of the verb.

18. Every verb, not defective, has three stems. These are called the **present**, **perfect**, and **supine stems**.

19. **The Present Stem**.—There are four systems of present stems, ending respectively in **ā**, **ē**, **ě**, **ī**.

20. **The Conjugations**.—These four kinds of present stems give rise to four systems of inflecting verbs, known as the four conjugations. Verbs whose **present stem ends in ā**

are said to belong to the **first conjugation**; in **ē**, to the **second conjugation**; in **ě**, to the **third conjugation**; in **ī**, to the **fourth conjugation**.

21. To determine the conjugation of a verb, therefore, we must know the present stem. To know the present stem, we must know the present infinitive, which always ends in **-re** and is always given in dictionaries and vocabularies. To find the present stem, cut off **-re** from the present infinitive.

22. **The Personal Endings.**—The personal endings of the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive modes, active, of all conjugations are:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First person.</i>	m, ō	mus
<i>Second person.</i>	s	tis
<i>Third person.</i>	t	nt

In regular verbs the first person singular ending is **m** in the subjunctive mode and after the letter **a** where it does not belong to the stem; otherwise, **ō**.

Note.—One slight exception to these endings will appear later.

23. The Present Indicative.

(a) **Meaning.**—This tense expresses action occurring during present time. It is called the tense of continued action in present time.

(b) **Formation.**—This tense is formed in all conjugations by adding the personal endings directly to the present stem without any tense sign.

For all stem changes in verb formation, see Appendix B.

24. The Present Indicative Active, First Conjugation.

amō, *I love*; present infinitive, **amāre**, *to love*; present stem, **amā**.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First person.</i>	amō , <i>I love.</i>	amāmus , <i>we love.</i>
<i>Second person.</i>	amās , <i>you love.</i>	amātis , <i>you love.</i>
<i>Third person.</i>	amat , <i>he loves.</i>	amant , <i>they love.</i>

(a) In addition to the translations above given, any renderings may be used which indicate present time. Thus, **amō** may be translated, *I love, I am loving, I do love.*

(b) The old second singular rendering, *thou lovest*, is obsolete except in the most solemn and formal style.

(c) The pronoun subjects, *I, you, we*, etc., are indicated by the **personal endings**, and are not separately expressed in Latin unless emphatic.

(d) The personal endings indicate the person and number of the subject, never the gender; so that **amat** may be translated equally well *he loves, she loves, it loves.*

25.

VOCABULARY.

amō, amāre, love.

convocō, convocāre, CONVOKE, call together, summon (a number of persons).

explōrō, explōrāre, EXPLORE, discover, find out.

expectō, expectāre, EXPECT; wait for.

laudō, laudāre, praise.

occupō, occupāre, OCCUPY, hold, seize.

26. Translate into English.—1. Amat, amāmus, amō, amant. 2. Convocāmus, explōrat, laudō, occupātis. 3. Exspectat, occupās, explōrō, convocat. 4. Exspectātis, amās, convocat, explōrant. 5. Laudāmus, occupō, expectant, explōrās. 6. Convocō, occupat, laudātis, expectāmus. 7. Explōrātis, laudat, convocās, occupant. 8. Exspectās, occupāmus, laudās, convocātis. 9. Amātis, explōrāmus, expectō, laudant.

27. Translate Into Latin.—1. We love. 2. They seize. 3. You occupy.¹ 4. I summon. 5. We expect. 6. They praise. 7. They wait. 8. You discover. 9. We explore. 10. I call together. 11. He praises. 12. She praises. 13. She holds. 14. I explore. 15. They discover. 16. We praise. 17. They love. 18. He finds out. 19. You convocate. 20. He seizes.

¹ You cannot tell here whether singular or plural is to be used: either will be correct.

LESSON III.

THE NOUN.

28. A noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or quality, e. g.: *Caesar, Rome, sword, virtue.*

29. Nouns have gender, number, and case.

30. **Gender.**—There are three genders, as in English, masculine, feminine, neuter.

(a) In English, gender is determined by sex and is called natural gender. In Latin, the gender of words is usually determined by their ending, and is called grammatical gender. The gender of words meaning persons usually follows sex, e. g.:

via, road, is feminine; *carrus, wagon*, is masculine; *nauta, sailor*, is masculine; *māter, mother*, is feminine; but *auxilia, irregular troops, auxiliaries*, is neuter.

31. **Case.**—Nouns are inflected to show their relation to verbs, to other nouns, and to prepositions. The various forms of the noun are called cases.

(a) There are six cases:

Nominative, the case of the *subject*.

Genitive, usually signifying *of*.

Dative, usually signifying *to* or *for*.

Accusative, the case of the *direct object*.

Vocative, the case of *address*.

Ablative, usually signifying *by, with, in, or from*.

(b) The nominative and vocative are called direct cases; the others, oblique cases.

(c) Number and to some extent gender are also exhibited by the inflection of nouns.

32. Stems.—Nouns, like verbs, have a stem, and to this stem the case endings are added to form the various cases.

33. The Five Declensions.—Nouns, like verbs, are classified, for inflection, according to their stems.

There are five classes, called declensions, whose stems end respectively in *ā*, *o*, a **consonant** or *i*, *u*, *ē*.

34. The declensions are named—

- (a) **First** or *a* declension.
- (b) **Second** or *o* declension.
- (c) **Third** or *consonant* declension.
- (d) **Fourth** or *u* declension.
- (e) **Fifth** or *e* declension.

35. Formation.—Except in the third declension the stem rarely appears, for the stem vowels unite with the case endings or disappear before them. Thus has been formed a series of case terminations which contain both the stem vowel and the true case endings. There is always, too, a part of the noun which does not change in declension, and this is called the **base**. To form the cases, add the case terminations directly to the base.

36. In practice we distinguish the declensions by the case termination of the genitive singular; thus:

DECLENSION.	GENITIVE TERMINATION.
First	ae
Second	ī
Third	is
Fourth	ūs
Fifth	ēi

37. Cases Alike in Form in All Declensions.

1. The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension.

2. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

3. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of all neuters are alike, and, if plural, end in **-a**.

38.

VOCABULARY.

et, conj., and; also, even.

mandō, mandāre, entrust; com-

MAND.

nūntiō, nūntiāre, announce, report,
tell.

oppugnō, oppugnāre, attack, as-
sault, besiege (of places only).

vocō, vocāre, call (both in sense of
'name' and 'summon').

39. 1. Explōrant et nūntiant. 2. Mandās et laudās. 3.
Vocāmus et exspectāmus. 4. Oppugnat et occupat. 5.
Amat et laudat. 6. Explōrāre. 7. Oppugnāre et occupāre.
8. Vocāre et nūntiāre. 9. Vocātis. 10. Convocāmus.

40. 1. We love and praise. 2. You attack and occupy.
3. They summon and announce. 4. He investigates and
reports. 5. To find out and report. 6. To entrust. 7.
To command and expect. 8. They summon and await.
9. We investigate and seize. 10. He calls and praises.



Coins of Julius Caesar: upper, as Dictator; lower, commemorating the subjugation of Egypt.

LESSON IV.

THE FIRST DECLENSION. THE SENTENCE.

41. The nominative singular of nouns of the first declension ends in **-a**. The genitive singular ends in **-ae**.

42. Nouns of the first declension are declined as follows:

porta, gate.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	porta , a gate, the gate.	<i>portae</i> ,	gates, the gates.
<i>Gen.</i>	portae , of a gate.	<i>portārum</i> ,	of (the) gates.
<i>Dat.</i>	portae , to or for a gate.	<i>portis</i> ,	to or for (the) gates.
<i>Acc.</i>	portam , a gate, the gate.	<i>portās</i> ,	gates, the gates.
<i>Voc.</i>	porta , O gate.	<i>portae</i> ,	O gates.
<i>Abl.</i>	portā , by, with, in, from a gate.	<i>portis</i> ,	by, with, in, from (the) gates.

Remark.—The case terminations are indicated by heavy type.

43. **Gender in the First Declension.**—Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except names of men and words meaning a person engaged in an occupation usually limited to men, *e. g.*:

porta, fem., gate; **silva**, fem., forest; **Iūlia**, fem., Julia; **Sulla**, masc., Sulla (a Roman general); **agricola**, masc., farmer.

The gender of nouns is indicated in the vocabularies by the letters **m.**, **f.**, **n.**, placed after them.

44. **Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.**

1. **Fīlia**, f., daughter, has **fīliābus** in the dat. and abl. plural to distinguish these cases from the corresponding cases of **fīlius**, m., son.

2. **Cōpia**, f., means a supply in the singular; but its plural, **cōpiae**, means troops.

THE SENTENCE.

45. A sentence is a combination of words to express thought.

(a) Sentences, as in English, may be simple, compound, complex.

(b) The necessary parts of a sentence are the subject and predicate.

46.

DEFINITIONS.

1. **Agreement.**—Words are said to agree when they are alike in one or more respects—gender, number, case, person, *e. g.*:

Two words agree in case when both are in the same case; they agree in gender when both are of the same gender, etc.

2. **Government.**—One word is said to govern another when it compels that other to assume some special form as regards case, mode, tense, etc.

3. **Object.**—An object is anything upon which a verb or verbal idea exerts its action or toward which it directs its influence.

4. Objects may be **direct** or **indirect**.

(a) A direct object is that person or thing on which a verb exerts its action directly; or it is the result produced by a verb, *e. g.*:

He saw *Sulla*; he gives *a book*; he made *a table*.

(b) An indirect object is the person or thing *to which* or *for which* a verb exerts its action or *toward which* it directs its influence, *e. g.*:

He gives *a book to the boy*.

5. Verbs in reference to meaning may be transitive or intransitive. Transitive verbs are such as may take a direct object. All others are intransitive.

47. SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

(a) Rule A.—The subject of a finite verb must be in the nominative case, e. g.:

Sulla laudat, Sulla praises.

(b) Rule B.—A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person, e. g.:

agricola vocat, the farmer calls; cōpiae oppugnant, the troops assault; Sulla et Galba exspectant, Sulla and Galba await.

(c) Rule C.—The direct object of an action must be in the accusative case, e. g.:

cōpiae silvās explōrant, the troops explore the forests; agricola filiam vocat, the farmer calls (his) daughter.

(d) Rule D.—The indirect object of an action must be in the dative case, e. g.:

Sulla victōriam copiīs nūntiat, Sulla announces the victory to the troops.

(e) Rule E.—A noun used to describe or define another noun, and not meaning the same thing, must be in the genitive case, e. g.:

filia Galbae, the daughter of Galba or Galba's daughter; incolae insulārum, the inhabitants of the islands.

48.

VOCABULARY.

agricola, -ae, m., farmer.

cōpia, -ae, f., sing., a supply, plenty; plur., troops, forces.

filia, -ae, f., daughter.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba (a man's name).

incola, -ae, m., f., inhabitant.

insula, -ae, f., island.

Iūlia, -ae, f., Julia (a woman's name).

nauta, -ae, m., sailor.

porta, -ae, f., gate.

silva, -ae, f., forest.

Sulla, -ae, m., Sulla (a Roman general).

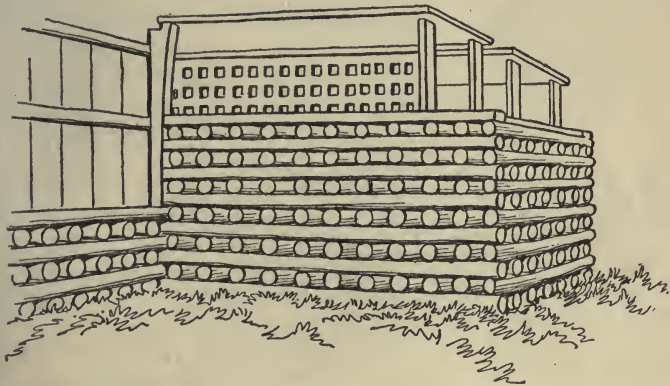
victōria, -ae, f., victory.

49. *Hints for Translating.*—Always begin by translating a sentence in the Latin word-order: it can then be rearranged in idiomatic English. Learn at the outset to handle the words and determine their relation to

each other in the order in which they came to the eye, ear, and mind of a Roman child. In this way only can be acquired that facility in reading which means mastery of a language.

50. 1. *Nautae incolās īnsulārum convocant.* 2. *Incolae silvārum cōpiās Galbae exspectant.* 3. *Sulla īnsulās cōpiīs Galbae mandat.* 4. *Iūlia filiās agricolārum laudat.* 5. *Sulla filiam Galbae mandat.* 6. *Sulla victōriam cōpiārum Galbae nūntiat.* 7. *Filiās agricolārum laudāmus.* 8. *In-sulam filiābus Galbae mandāmus.* 9. *Cōpie Sullae portās oppugnant.* 10. *Cōpie Sullae nautās Galbae exspectant.* 11. *Galba Iūliam exspectat.* 12. *Cōpie Sullae īnsulam occupant.*

51. 1. Julia summons the daughters of Galba (Galba's daughters). 2. Galba's troops (the troops of Galba) assault the gate. 3. The sailors assault the islands. 4. You announce the victory of Galba to Sulla. 5. Julia entrusts an island to the farmers' daughters. 6. Galba summons the inhabitants of the forest. 7. Julia waits for Galba. 8. Galba's daughters love Julia's daughter.



Agger (Column of Trajan). This was a siege-work of earth and timbers, designed to raise the besiegers to a level with the top of the fortifications.

LESSON V.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

52. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second Declension ends in **-us, -er, -ir**, masculine; **-um**, neuter. The genitive singular ends in **-ī** for all genders.

53. Nouns of the second declension are declined as follows:

	carrus, m., <i>wagon.</i>	puer, m., <i>boy.</i>	ager, m., <i>field.</i>	vir, m., <i>man.</i>	bellum, n., <i>war.</i>
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	carrus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Gen.</i>	carrī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
<i>Dat.</i>	carrō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Acc.</i>	carrum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
<i>Voc.</i>	carre	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Abl.</i>	carrō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	carrī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Gen.</i>	carrōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	carrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
<i>Acc.</i>	carrōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
<i>Voc.</i>	carrī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Abl.</i>	carrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

54. Like **puer** are declined **gener, son-in-law; socer, father-in-law; vesper, evening.**

55.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land; pl. territories.*

amicus, -ī, m., *friend.*

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul (inhabitant of western Europe in Roman times).*

iumentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden, pack animal.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town, stronghold.*

Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*

vastō, -āre, *devastate, lay waste.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

56. 1. Gallī agrōs agricolārum vastant. 2. Galba silvās explōrat et bellum nūntiat. 3. Galba cōpiīs Gallōrum bellum nūntiat. 4. Cōpiae Gallōrum oppida Rōmānōrum oppugnant. 5. Nautae agrōs incolārum īsulārum vastant. 6. Rōmānī bella et victōriās amant. 7. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum oppidum amicōrum¹ occupant et Gallōs exspectant. 8. Amīcī Gallōrum iūmenta agricolīs mandant. 9. Fīliae agricolārum agrōs et iūmenta amant. 10. Sulla vīcōs et agrōs agricolārum occupat et vastat.

¹ *Of their friends*; the common possessive pronouns, when not emphatic, are generally omitted and may be inserted in translating, just like the articles, whenever necessary.

57. 1. Julia entrusts the farmer's pack animal to (her) friend. 2. The Gauls besiege the town of the Romans and lay waste (their) lands. 3. Galba reports war to the Romans and entrusts to (his) friends the villages and pack animals. 4. The Gauls seize the stronghold of the inhabitants of the forest and wait for the forces of the Romans. 5. A farmer loves (his) lands and (his) beasts of burden. 6. The sailors of the Gauls seize the islands.



Roman soldier wearing the torques. This was a twisted circlet awarded to soldiers for bravery. By the Romans it was worn on the breast like a medal; by the Gauls, around the neck.

LESSON VI.

THE SECOND DECLENSION (Continued).

58. Peculiarities of Nouns of the Second Declension.

1. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally form the genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī**. Such contracted genitives accent the penult, *e. g.*:

<i>Nom.</i> concilium, n., council	<i>imperium</i> , n., rule, order	<i>filius</i> , m., son.
<i>Gen.</i> concili (sometimes concilii)	impéri (imperii)	filī (filiī)

2. Proper names in **-ius** and **filius** drop the final **-e** in the vocative singular, *e. g.*:

<i>Nom.</i> Servius	<i>filius</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Servi	filī

3. Several neuter nouns of frequent occurrence are declined and used only in the plural. They are:

<i>Nom.</i> arma, arms, weapons	castra, camp	hiberna, winter quarters
<i>Gen.</i> armōrum	castrōrum	hibernōrum

4. **Locus**, *place*, is masculine in the singular, neuter in the plural. **Locus** and **filius** are thus declined.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	locus	loci	filius	filii
<i>Gen.</i>	loci	locōrum	filī (filiī)	filiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	locō	locis	filio	filiis
<i>Acc.</i>	locum	loci	filium	filiōs
<i>Voc.</i>	loci	loci	filī	filiī
<i>Abl.</i>	locō	locis	filio	filiis

5. *Deus, god*, has *deus* in vocative singular; *deī, diī, dī*, in nominative and vocative plural; and *deīs, diīs, dīs*, in dative and ablative plural.

59.

Prepositions.

Prepositions show the relations of nouns to other words (chiefly verbs) more accurately than the cases alone could do. They govern the accusative and ablative cases only.

60. All prepositions originally expressed relations of place and motion only. Therefore, *when hesitating between the use of a preposition and a case form, search for an idea of place or motion: if you find it, use the preposition; if not, use the case form, e. g.:*

tēlum virō dat, *he gives the javelin to the man.* (No motion implied and *to* merely indicates a dative of indirect object.) *tēlum ad virum portat*, *he carries the javelin to the man.* (Here is motion, and a preposition must be used.)

61.

VOCABULARY.

ad, prep. with accus., *to, toward; against; near.*

auxilium, -ī (-iī), n., *help, aid*; plur., *irregular troops, auxiliaries* (foreign troops enlisted in the Roman service).

castra, -ōrum, pl., n., *camp.*

concilium, -ī (-iī), n., *council, assembly.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with* (always denoting accompaniment).

do, dare,¹ *give.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*

filius, -ī (-iī), m., *son.*

implōrō, -āre, IMPLORE, *beg, entreat.*

incitō, -āre, INCITE, *urge on.*

locus, -ī, m. in sing., n. in pl., LOCATION, *place.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

proelium, -ī (-iī), n., *battle.*

puer, -ī, m., *boy.*

sed, conj., *but.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

¹ *dō* is conjugated like other verbs of the first conjugation, but its stem vowel is short.

62. 1. *Galba et Sulla auxilium Rōmānōrum implōrant.*
2. *Auxilia Gallōrum cum incolīs silvārum cōpiās ad bellum incitant.* 3. *Cōpia Gallōrum castra Rōmānōrum tēlīs*

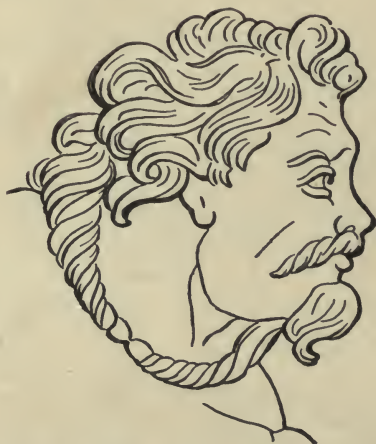
oppugnant. 4. Dōna filiābus damus. 5. Cōpiaē Rōmānōrum locum proeliī Galbae nūntiant et auxilium implōrāt, sed nōn dat. 6. Rōmānī concilium Gallōrum convocant et eōs (*them*) ad proelium incitant. 7. Sulla proelium cum Gallīs et victōriam Rōmānīs nūntiat. 8. Proelium cum nautīs nūntiāmus, sed nōn victōriam. 9. Auxilia Rōmānōrum Gallīs dōnum tēlōrum dant, sed eōs (*them*) ad bellum nōn incitant. 10. Gallī cōpiās ad portās oppidī incitant.

63. 1. Julia gives (her) friend¹ the gift of a javelin, and urges him (*eum*) on to² the war. 2. The farmer announces the battle to (his) sons and daughters. 3. I call³ a council of the sailors. 4. The inhabitants of the forest attack the gates of the camp with javelins. 5. You entreat the aid of the Romans, but they do not give (it). 6. Sulla entrusts the location of the camp to Galba and attacks the town with javelins.

¹ What relation does this word bear to the verb? Hence what case?

² Use preposition. Why?

³ Vocō or convocō? Why?



Head of a Gaul wearing the torques.

LESSON VII.

THE VERB *SUM*. MODIFIERS.

Sum, *I am* ; present infinitive, *esse*, *to be*.

64. The verb *to be* has two uses:

(a) It may merely connect the subject and predicate, *e. g.*:

I am a man.

(b) It may express existence, *e. g.*:

virī sunt, there¹ are men; i. e., men exist.

¹ There is no Latin word to express this use of *there*: it must simply be omitted.

65. No form of *sum* can ever govern a noun.

66. Present Indicative of *Sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sumus, we are.</i>
<i>es, you are.</i>	<i>estis, you are.</i>
<i>est, he is; there is.</i>	<i>sunt, they are; there are.</i>

Modifiers.

67. A word, phrase, or clause which in any way explains, adds to, or limits the meaning of another word is said to modify that word and is called a modifier.

(a) Modifiers may be: (1) adjectival, modifying nouns; (2) adverbial, modifying verbs.

68. Agreement may exist between **verb** and **subject**; between **two nouns**; between **noun** and **adjective**; between **relative** and **antecedent**.

69. Agreement between two nouns or between adjective and noun may be: (a) **attributive**; (b) **predicate**.

70. Attributive agreement is close and direct, without the aid of any verb, *e. g.*:

The good man; Caesar, the consul.

71. Predicate agreement is asserted agreement, a verb being required in order to show that agreement exists, *e. g.*:

The man is good; Caesar is consul; the general became emperor; the man seems good.

Agreement of the Noun.

72. Nouns can agree with each other only when they indicate the same person or thing, and are then called **appositives**, *e. g.*:

In *Caesar the consul* and *Caesar is consul*, *Caesar* and *consul* are appositives, attributive in the first instance, predicate in the second.

73. Appositives, whether attributive or predicate, agree in case, *e. g.*:

Iūlia est filia Galbae, Julia is the daughter of Galba; Galba dōna Iūliae filiae dat, Galba gives gifts to his daughter Julia.

74.

VOCABULARY.

Belgae, -ārum, m., <i>the Belgians.</i>	of motion); with abl., <i>in, on</i>
Caesar, <i>Caesar</i> (the great Roman general and statesman).	(with idea of position).
fuga, -ae, f., <i>flight.</i>	periculum, -ī, n., <i>danger.</i>
Germānus, -ī, m., <i>a German.</i>	sē, acc. case sing. and pl., <i>himself, herself, themselves.</i>
in, prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., <i>into, on, against</i> (with idea	sum, inf., <i>esse, be.</i>
	vītō, -āre, <i>shun, avoid.</i>

Idioms.¹

in fugam dāre, to put to flight (lit., *to give into flight*).

sē fugae mandāre, to take flight (lit., *to entrust one's self to flight*).

¹ An idea expressed in any language in a manner peculiar to that language is called an idiom.

75. 1. Filius Sullae sum. 2. Germānī in silvīs sunt. 3. Sunt in oppidō amīcī Belgārum. 4. Est in bellō perīculum. 5. Germānī perīculum in proeliīs nōn vītant. 6. Caesar Belgās in fugam ad oppidum dat. 7. Belgae ad oppidum sē fugae mandant. 8. Germānī sē in silvās fugae mandant et tēla cōpiārum Galbae vītant. 9. Nautae īsulās Germānīs mandant et perīculum tēlōrum vītant. 10. Castra Germānōrum ad oppidum sunt.¹

¹ Castra, being plural, requires a plural verb: **sunt** must here be translated *is*.

76. 1. You are Galba's friend. 2. We are friends of the Belgians. 3. There is danger in the forests. 4. We shun the danger of war. 5. You put the Belgians to flight with javelins. 6. The Germans take flight toward the forest. 7. We do not avoid danger, but attack the camp with javelins. 8. The Germans take flight with the Belgians.



Battering ram, ariēs.

LESSON VIII.

THE ADJECTIVE.

77. Adjectives are words employed to describe nouns.

(a) Adjectives have gender, number, case. They are declined exactly like nouns.

78. Classes of Adjectives.

With respect to declension there are two classes of adjectives:

I. **Adjectives of the second-first-second declension.** This means that the masculine of the adjective is of the second declension; the feminine, of the first; the neuter, of the second.

II. Adjectives of the third declension.

79. Declension.

Adjectives of the second-first-second declension end in the nominative in **-us** or **-er**, masc.; **-a**, fem.; **-um**, neut. Those in **-us** are thus declined:

bonus, good.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

80. Agreement of the Adjective.—An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, *e. g.*:

bonus amicus, a good friend; *bonus agricola*, a good farmer; *bonorum agricolarum*, of good farmers; *bona filia*, a good daughter; *bonis filiabus*, to or for the good daughters; *magnum bellum*, a great war.

81. Adjectives Used Substantively.—When the noun with which an adjective agrees is a very familiar one, like *man*, *people*, *soldier*, *possessions*, *thing*, etc., it is often omitted, especially if plural, and the adjective is then said to be used substantively; that is, used as a noun, *e. g.*:

boni, the good (*men or people* being understood); *bona*, goods, property (*things* being understood); *alia*, other (*things*).

82.

VOCABULARY.

<i>arma</i> , -ōrum, pl., n., ARMS, weapons.	<i>multus</i> , -a, -um, adj., much; pl., many.
<i>bonus</i> , -a, -um, adj., good.	<i>numerus</i> , -ī, m., number, quantity.
<i>ē</i> ¹ (<i>ex</i>), prep., with abl., out of, from.	<i>parvus</i> , -a, -um, adj., small.
<i>Germānia</i> , -ae, f., Germany.	<i>populus</i> , -ī, m., nation, people (in national sense; hence always singular except when more than one nation is spoken of).
<i>Labiēnus</i> , -ī, m., Labienus (a lieutenant of Caesar).	<i>pugnō</i> , -āre, fight.
<i>magnus</i> , -a, -um, adj., great, large.	<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, adj., Roman.

¹ *ē* is used before consonants only; *ex*, before vowels and consonants.

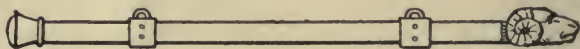
83. 1. *Iūmenta Germānōrum magna nōn sunt.* 2. *Rōmānī magna proelia multīs in¹ locīs Germāniae pugnāt.* 3. *Belgae multa iūmenta bona² Rōmānīs dant.* 4. *Caesar Germānōs in fugam dat ē castrīs ad oppidum.* 5. *Magnum numerum bonōrum armōrum Belgīs in oppidō datis.* 6. *Magnum proelium cum multīs Belgīs in silvā pugnāmus.* 7. *Agrī agricolārum Rōmānōrum parvī sunt.* 8. *Magnae silvae multīs in locīs Germāniae sunt.* 9. *Cōpia Belgārum*

oppidum armīs oppugnant. 10. Cōpiaē populī Rōmānī magnō cum periculō oppidum oppugnant.

¹ A preposition often stands between an adjective and its noun.

² A noun modified by two adjectives often stands between them.

84. 1. We give many small javelins to the forces of Labienus. 2. There is a great quantity of good arms in the small village. 3. I fight battles in many places. 4. The pack animals of the Germans are small but good. 5. He shuns the large javelins of the Belgians. 6. He takes flight from the great camp of the Romans. 7. The farmers urge on the beasts of burden in the fields. 8. The gates of the camp are small but many.



Battering ram as used under *vīnea*, or *shed*.

LESSON IX.

THE ADJECTIVE (Continued).

85. Adjectives in *-er* of the second-first-second declension are thus declined:

liber, free.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

pulcher, beautiful.

SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>

86. Like *liber* are declined *asper, rough; miser, miserable; tener, tender*, and a few others.

87.

VOCABULARY.

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon*.

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus* (a Roman name).

dīmicō, -āre, *contend, fight*.

expugnō, -āre, *take by storm*.

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii* (a Celtic tribe inhabiting what is now Switzerland).

hīberna, -ōrum, pl., n., *winter quarters*.

lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant; ambassador, envoy*.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.

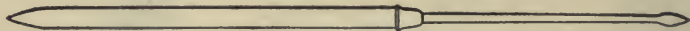
parō, -āre, *PREPARE; procure*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful*.

superō, -āre, *overcome, defeat; surpass*.

88. 1. Cōpiae Germānōrum iūmenta et carrōs parant. 2. Caesar cum Helvētīiis proeliō dīmicat et agrōs vastat. 3. Crassus cōpiās Helvētiōrum, populī liberī, magnō proeliō superāt. 4. Labiēnus lēgātus hīberna Germānōrum expugnat. 5. Filia agricolae pulchra est. 6. Agricola multa dōna pulchrae filiae dat, sed filiō dat bonōs agrōs. 7. Belgae Helvētiōs vocant populum liberum. 8. Magna castra Belgārum Caesar tēlis expugnat. 9. Ex hībernīs cōpiās Belgārum in fugam dō. 10. Labiēnus lēgātus cōpiīs arma, iūmenta, carrōs dat.

89. 1. I contend with the Germans in many battles. 2. Caesar defeats the Germans with javelins in the great forests of Germany. 3. We contend in battle with the Germans in many places. 4. You prepare wagons and pack animals and a great quantity of weapons. 5. I call the Romans a free people. 6. We summon a council of the Romans, a free people. 7. You take the great town by storm. 8. We procure pack animals and arms.



Roman javelin, pīlum.

LESSON X.

THE VERB.

Review sections 11–23.

90. The Present Indicative Active, Second Conjugation.—

moneō, I advise; pres. inf., monēre, to advise; pres. stem, monē.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>moneō, I advise.</i>	<i>monēmus, we advise.</i>
<i>monēs, you advise.</i>	<i>monētis, you advise.</i>
<i>monet, he advises.</i>	<i>monent, they advise.</i>

91. VOCABULARY.

<i>audeō, -ēre, dare.</i>	<i>habeō, -ēre, HAVE, possess; regard.</i>
<i>contineō, -ēre, restrain, confine, hold in check.</i>	<i>iubeō, -ēre, command, order.</i>
<i>dē, prep. with abl., about, concerning.</i>	<i>moneō, -ēre, advise, warn.</i>
	<i>portō, -āre, carry, bring.</i>
	<i>praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder.</i>

Idiom.

parāre ad (with accus.), to prepare for (a thing).

92. 1. Rōmānī multa iūmenta et arma ad bellum parant. 2. Magna castra Belgārum oppugnāre nōn audeō. 3. Cōpiae magnum oppidum telīs expugnant et praedam in castra carrīs portant. 4. Caesar cōpiās castrīs continet; hiberna Belgārum oppugnāre nōn audet. 5. Labiēnus lēgātum tēla ad proelium parāre iubet. 6. Caesar cōpiās iubet carrōs ad praedam parāre. 7. Agricolaē Belgārum multōs agrōs bonōs et vicōs habent. 8. Labiēnus lēgātus cōpiās dē periculō proeliī monet. 9. Labiēnō victōriam Galbae in Germāniā nūntiāre nōn audēmus. 10. Vicōs multīs in locīs Germāniae occupātis.

93. 1. We order Labienus to hold (his) troops in check. 2. The farmers possess many beasts of burden and wagons. 3. I prepare the javelins for battle. 4. I warn Labienus about the dangers of battle in the forests. 5. You carry the booty to the gates of the camp. 6. The Germans have many villages in the forests, but they are small.

LESSON XI.

THE VERB (Continued).

The Imperfect and Future Tenses of the Indicative, First and Second Conjugations.

94. The Imperfect Tense.—The action of the imperfect indicative lies in past time, and it is always represented as continuous, repeated, or customary. The imperfect is called the tense of continued action in past time, *e. g.*:

He was attacking the camp; He attacked the enemy wherever he saw them.

The first example shows an action *going on, continuing*, in past time; the second indicates the *habitual, repeated, or customary* performance of an act. The imperfect cannot be used of a single completed act.

95. The Future Tense has the same meaning in Latin as in English. It is called the tense of continued action in future time.

96. The Present System.—The present, imperfect and future tenses, being formed on the present stem, constitute the present system. They all express continued action.

Formation.

97. (a) The Imperfect in all conjugations adds the *tense sign -bā* to the present stem.

(b) The Future in the first and second conjugations adds the *tense sign -bi* to the present stem.

98. Conjugation.

(a) Imperfect:

First Conjugation.

amābam, *I was loving, I loved.*

amābās, *you were loving, you loved.*

amābat, *he was loving, he loved.*

amābāmus, *we were loving, we loved.*

amābātis, *you were loving, you loved.*

amābant, *they were loving, they loved.*

Second Conjugation.

monēbam, <i>I was advising, I advised.</i>	monēbāmus, <i>we were advising, we advised.</i>
monēbās, <i>you were advising, you advised.</i>	monēbātis, <i>you were advising, you advised.</i>
monēbat, <i>he was advising, he advised.</i>	monēbant, <i>they were advising, they advised.</i>

(b) Future:*First Conjugation.*

amābō, <i>I shall love.</i>	amābimus, <i>we shall love.</i>
amābis, <i>you will love.</i>	amābitis, <i>you will love.</i>
amābit, <i>he will love.</i>	amābunt, <i>they will love.</i>

Second Conjugation.

monēbō, <i>I shall advise.</i>	monēbimus, <i>we shall advise.</i>
monēbis, <i>you will advise.</i>	monēbitis, <i>you will advise.</i>
monēbit, <i>he will advise.</i>	monēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>

99.**VOCABULARY.**

litterae, -ārum, pl., f., <i>a letter, epistle (the singular means a letter of the alphabet).</i>	prohibeō, -ēre, PROHIBIT, <i>prevent; keep off, keep away from.</i>
nūntius, -ī (-iī), m., <i>messenger; also message.</i>	socius, -ī (-iī), m., <i>comrade; in military sense, ally.</i>
	vir, -ī, m., <i>a man.</i>

100. 1. Ad Labiēnum litterās dē victōriā Crassī portābō.
 2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum Gallōs oppidīs sociōrum prohibēbant.
 3. Nuntii litterās dē magnō proeliō ad Galbam portābant.
 4. Germānī agrōs Belgārum vastābant et praedam carrīs portābant. 5. Socii. Rōmānōrum magna proelia cum Germānīs pugnābant. 6. Ad Galbam nūntium dē carrīs et iūmentīs portābis. 7. Agrōs in silvā habēbō. 8. Hiberna Belgārum expugnābimus et virōs in fugam dabimus. 9. Proeliō cum incolīs silvārum dīmīcābo et eōs (*them*) tēlis superābō. 10. Virī praedam ad oppidum magnīs carrīs portābant.

101. 1. The messenger was carrying a letter to the Romans about the victory of the Gauls. 2. The man will give Julia many beautiful gifts. 3. We shall keep the

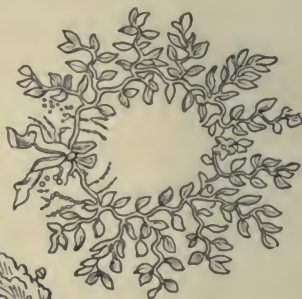
Gauls away from the winter quarters. 4. The Gauls will storm the town and carry the booty in wagons. 5. We were preparing (our) weapons for battle. 6. Caesar was holding back the troops in camp.



1

1. Triumphal crown of laurel awarded to a victorious general when celebrating his triumph.

Roman
Crowns.



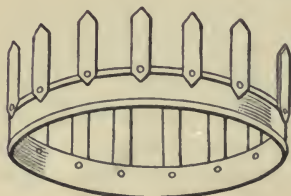
2

2. Crown of the siege, woven of grass growing on the spot and awarded to the general relieving a besieged Roman army.



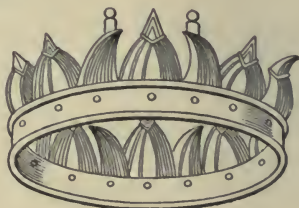
3

3. Civic crown of oak leaves, awarded for saving a Roman citizen's life in battle.



4

4. Crown of the camp; of gold, awarded to the first soldier to scale the wall of an enemy's camp.



5

5. Naval crown; of gold, awarded to the first soldier to board an enemy's ship in a sea fight.

LESSON XII.

THE THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS.

102. The genitive singular of nouns of the third declension ends in **-is**. It is the only declension in which we deal directly with the stem of the noun.

103. There are two classes of stems:

(a) Stems ending in a consonant.

(b) Stems ending in **-i**.

104. Consonant stems are divided into mute, liquid, nasal, and spirant stems. (Review the Alphabet Table in 3.)

MUTE STEMS.

105. Formation of the Nominative Singular from the Stem.

1. **Labial**.—A labial mute remains unchanged before the nom. ending **s**: stem, **op**; nom., **ops**; gen., **opis**, f., *power*. Stems in **-ip** change **i** to **e** in nom.: stem, **princip**; nom., **princeps**; gen., **principis**, m., *chief*.

2. **Lingual**.—A lingual mute disappears before the nom. ending **s**: stem, **lapid**; nom., **lapis**; gen., **lapidis**, m., *stone*. Stems in **-it** change **i** to **e** in nom.: stem, **milit**; nom., **miles**; gen., **militis**, m., *soldier*. The stem **capit**, neuter, has nom., **caput**; gen., **capitis**, n., *head*. The stem **obsid** has nom., **obses**; gen., **obsidis**, m., *hostage*.

3. **Palatal**.—A palatal mute unites with the nom. ending **s** to form **x**: stem **rēg**; nom., **rēx**; gen., **rēgis**, m., *king*; stem, **duc**; nom., **dux**; gen., **ducis**, m., *leader, guide*. Stems in **-ic** and **-īc** have nominatives **-ex** and **-īx** respectively; those in **-ig** have **-ex**.

106.

Declension.

1. Labial:

princeps, m., stem princip, *chief*.

SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	princeps	PLUR.—	principēs
<i>Gen.</i>	principis		principum
<i>Dat.</i>	principī		principibus
<i>Acc.</i>	principem		principēs
<i>Voc.</i>	princeps		principēs
<i>Abl.</i>	principe		principibus

2. Lingual:

lapis, m., stem lapid, *stone*.

SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	lapis
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidis
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidī
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidem
<i>Voc.</i>	lapis
<i>Abl.</i>	lapide

mīles, m., mīlit, *soldier*.

<i>Nom.</i>	mīles
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlitis
<i>Dat.</i>	militī
<i>Acc.</i>	militem
<i>Voc.</i>	mīles
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlite

PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	lapidēs
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidum
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidibus
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidēs
<i>Voc.</i>	lapidēs
<i>Abl.</i>	lapidibus

<i>Nom.</i>	militēs
<i>Gen.</i>	militum
<i>Dat.</i>	militibus
<i>Acc.</i>	militēs
<i>Voc.</i>	militēs
<i>Abl.</i>	militibus

3. Palatal:

rēx, m., stem rēg, *king*.

SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	rēx
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge

dux, m., duc, *leader*.

<i>Nom.</i>	dux
<i>Gen.</i>	ducis
<i>Dat.</i>	ducī
<i>Acc.</i>	ducem
<i>Voc.</i>	dux
<i>Abl.</i>	duce

PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus

<i>Nom.</i>	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ducum
<i>Dat.</i>	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ducēs
<i>Voc.</i>	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ducibus

Additional Examples:

Labial.—ops, gen. opis, f., *power*; pl., *resources*.

Lingual.—obses, gen. obsidis, m., *hostage*: ariēs, gen. arietis, m., *ram*: custōs, gen., custōdis, m., *guard*: aetās, gen., aetātis, f., *age*: virtūs, gen. virtūtis, f., *valor*: palūs, gen. palūdis, f., *swamp*: caput, gen. capitis, n., *head*.

Palatal.—rēmex, gen. rēmigis, m., *oarsman*: iūdex, gen. iūdicis, m., *judge*: rādix, gen. rādīcis, m., *root*, *base*.

107.

VOCABULARY.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., <i>Ariovistus</i> (a German king).	area of western Europe in Roman times).
cōfirmō, -āre, <i>establish; encourage; strengthen</i> .	miles, -itis, m., <i>soldier</i> .
eques, -itis, m., <i>horseman</i> ; pl., <i>cavalry</i> .	obses, -idis, m., <i>hostage</i> .
equus, -ī, m., <i>horse</i> .	pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace</i> .
Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul (name of a vast	rēx, rēgis, m., <i>king</i> .
	video, -ēre, <i>see</i> .
	virtūs, -ūtis, m., <i>valor</i> ; VIRTUE.

108. 1. Caesar tēla mīlitibus dabat, sed equitibus equōs. 2. Ariovistus rēx Germānōrum multa proelia cum cōpiīs Rōmānōrum pugnābat. 3. Cōpiae Belgārum obsidēs Galbae dabunt et pācem cum Rōmānīs cōfirmābunt. 4. Rōmānī magnā virtūte dīmīcant et Gallōs superant. 5. Litterās dē magnā victōriā nūntiī ad Galbam portābunt. 6. Pācem cum Ariovistō mīlitēs Rōmānōrum cōfirmant. 7. Mīlitēs Germānōrum pācem cum Rōmānīs cōfirmābant et multōs obsidēs dabant. 8. Mīlitēs Rōmānī magnum oppidum in Galliā magnā virtūte oppugnābunt. 9. Caesar mīlitēs Belgārum in silvīs vidēbit et cōpiās castrīs continēbit. 10. Mīlitēs Belgās hībernīs prohibēbunt.

109. 1. Caesar will establish peace with the soldiers of the Gauls. 2. The farmers of the Belgians kept¹ the Germans away from their lands. 3. You will see many soldiers in the great forest. 4. The King will give hostages to Labienus and will establish peace. 5. The cavalry of Sulla contended with the soldiers of the Belgians with great valor. 6. I was laying waste the territories of the Germans and I saw many wagons and pack animals.

¹ Keep . . . away, one word.

LESSON XIII.

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued).

Liquid and Nasal Stems.

110. Formation of the Nominative Singular from the Stem.

(a) **Liquid Stems.**—In these the nominative is regularly the same as the stem:

Stem, *cōsul*: nom., *cōsul*; gen., *cōsulis*, *consul*.

Stems in **-tr** have **-ter** in nominative:

Stem, *mātr*: nom., *māter*; gen., *mātris*, *mother*.

The important neuter noun **iter**, *road, march*, forms its genitive, dative, and ablative singular and the entire plural on the stem **itiner**.

(b) **Nasal Stems.**—Stems in **-ōn** drop **-n** to form the nominative:

Stem, *legiōn*: nom., *legiō*; gen., *legiōnis*, *legion*.

Stems in **-din** and **-gin** form the nominative in **-dō** and **-gō** respectively:

Stems, *ordin*, *virgin*: nom., *ordō*, *virgō*; gen., *ordinis*, *virginis*, *rank* and *maiden*.

Other stems in **-in** retain **-n** and change **i** to **e** in nominative:

Stem, *nōmin*: nom., *nōmen*; gen., *nōminis*, *name*.

Important exceptions are the stems **homin** and its compound **nēmin** (= **nē homin**), forming nominative **homō** and **nēmō**, *man* and *nobody*.

The labial nasal stem **hiem** has the regular formative **-s**:

hiems, hiemis, winter.

111.

Declension.

1. Liquid:

cōnsul, m., stem, cōnsul, consul.

SING.—	Nom.	cōnsul	PLUR.—	cōnsulēs
	Gen.	cōnsulis		cōnsulum
	Dat.	cōnsulī		cōnsulibus
	Acc.	cōnsulem		cōnsulēs
	Voc.	cōnsul		cōnsulēs
	Abl.	cōnsule		cōnsulibus

2. Nasal:

legiō, f., ordō, m., nōmen, n.,
stem, legion, stem, ordin, stem, nōmin,
legion. rank. name.

SING.—	Nom.	legiō	ordō	nōmen
	Gen.	legiōnis	ordinis	nōminis
	Dat.	legiōnī	ordinī	nōminī
	Acc.	legiōnem	ordinem	nōmen
	Voc.	legiō	ordō	nōmen
	Abl.	legiōne	ordine	nōmine

PLUR.—	Nom.	legiōnēs	ordinēs	nōmina
	Gen.	legiōnum	ordinum	nōminum
	Dat.	legiōnibus	ordinibus	nominibus
	Acc.	legiōnēs	ordinēs	nōmina
	Voc.	legiōnēs	ordinēs	nōmina
	Abl.	legiōnibus	ordinibus	nōminibus

Additional Examples:

Liquid.—**victor**, gen. **victōris**, m., *conqueror*; **māter**, gen. **mātris**, f., *mother*; **iter**, gen. **itineris**, n., *road, march*.

Nasal.—**virgō**, gen. **virginis**, f., *maiden*; **homō**, gen. **hominis**, m., *man*; **hiems**, gen. **hiemis**, f., *winter*.

112.

VOCABULARY.

amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship*; *alliance*.

animus, -ī, m., *mind*; *courage*; *character*.

Caesar, -is, m., *Caesar*.

cōsul, -is, m., *consul* (chief magistrate of Rome; two elected annually).

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*; pl., *crops*.
legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion* (regiment).

nam, conj., *for*.

ordō, -inis, m., *rank* (of soldiers); *order*, *arrangement*.

trāns, prep. with acc., *across* (used both of motion and position).

verbum, -ī, n., *word*; pl. often *a speech*.

113. 1. *Agricolae frūmentum ad legiōnēs cōsulis trāns flūmen portābant.* 2. *Cōsul animōs militum verbīs cōfirmābit.* 3. *Pācem et amīcitiam cum Belgīs legiōnes cōfirmābant.* 4. *In oppidīs trāns flūmen multum frūmentum est.* 5. *Lēgātus arma ordinibus legiōnum dabat, nam mīlitēs Germānōrum exspectābat.* 6. *Consul Caesarī multa tēla dabat, quae (which) legiōnibus mandābat.* 7. *Frūmenta in agrīs trāns flūmen bona sunt.* 8. *Consul Caesarem magnum virum vocābat et animos militum verbis cōfirmābat.* 9. *Caesar consūlem iubēbit ordinēs legiōnum in silvīs cōfirmāre.* 10. *Lēgātum iubēbō concilium legiōnum convocāre et mīlitēs ad proelium parāre.*

114. 1. There are many ranks of soldiers in a legion. 2. The lieutenant encouraged the minds of the soldiers by a speech. 3. Caesar ordered the consul to hold the legions in check in the village. 4. The Belgians possess many towns and villages in the territory across the river. 5. You will order the Germans to prepare grain. 6. The sailors carried the crops of the farmers from the fields to the river.



Roman scabbard.

LESSON XIV.

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued).

Spirant Stems.

115. Formation of the Nominative Singular from the Stem.

In these the stem always ends in **-s** and the nominative is regularly the same as the stem.

(1) The original **-s** of the stem becomes **-r** between two vowels.

(2) In some words the **-s** of the stem sometimes becomes **-r** even when final, so that both forms of the nominative occur:

arbōs and **arbor**, *tree*; **honōs** and **honor**, *honor*.

(3) A most important class of neuter nouns, in which the final **-s** of the stem is preceded by **e** or **o**, has **-us** in the nominative.

116. Declension.

	mōs, m., <i>Stem, mōs, custom.</i>	iūs, n., <i>iūs, right, law.</i>	arbor, f., <i>arbos, tree.</i>	opus, n., <i>opes, work.</i>	tempus, n., <i>tempos, time.</i>
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	mōs	iūs	arbor, arbōs	opus	tempus
<i>Gen.</i>	mōris	iūris	arboris	operis	temporis
<i>Dat.</i>	mōrī	iūrī	arborī	operī	temporī
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrem	iūs	arborem	opus	tempus
<i>Voc.</i>	mōs	iūs	arbor, arbōs	opus	tempus
<i>Abl.</i>	mōre	iūre	arbore	opere	tempore
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	mōrēs	iūra	arborēs	opera	tempora
<i>Gen.</i>	mōrum	iūrum	arborum	operum	temporum
<i>Dat.</i>	mōribus	iūribus	arboribus	operibus	temporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrēs	iūra	arborēs	opera	tempora
<i>Voc.</i>	mōrēs	iūra	arborēs	opera	tempora
<i>Abl.</i>	mōribus	iūribus	arboribus	operibus	temporibus

117. The spirant-stem neuters in *-us* used by Caesar in the first four books of the *Gallie War* are:

corpus, corporis, body.

dēdecus, dēdecoris, dishonor.

facinus, facinoris, a crime.

frigus, frīgoris, cold.

genus, generis, n., stock, kind, family.

latus, lateris, side, flank.

litus, litoris, shore.

mūnus, mūneris, duty, gift.

onus, oneris, load, burden.

opus, operis, work.

pecus, pecoris, cattle.

pondus, ponderis, weight.

scelus, sceleris, wickedness.

tempus, temporis, time.

vulnus, vulneris, wound.

118.

VOCABULARY.

agger, -is, m., embankment, rampart.

frigus, -oris, n., cold; pl., cold weather.

genus, -eris, n., race, family; kind.

homō, -inis, m., man, mankind.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., MATURE, ripe.

propter, prep. with acc., on account of, because of.

Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine.

vulnus, -eris, n., wound.

119. 1. Propter frīgora frūmentum in agrīs Galliae mātūrum nōn est. 2. Multa genera hominum in silvīs Germaniae sunt. 3. Propter vulnera mīlitēs sē in fugam ad flūmen Rhēnum mandābunt. 4. Mīlitēs Caesaris in aggere castrōrum cōpiās Belgārum expectābant. 5. Frūmenta mātūra non sunt, nam magnum est frīgus. 6. Legiōnēs Rōmānae magnum hibernōrum aggerem tēlis oppugnābant. 7. Mīlitēs in aggere Rōmānōs expectant. 8. Propter multa tēla Belgārum legiōnēs sē fugae mandābunt. 9. Caesar genere Rōmānus est. 10. Mīlitēs in aggere sunt, nam Germānōs expectant.

120. 1. Ariovistus is a German by race. 2. The grain in the fields across the Rhine is not ripe, for the cold is great in Germany. 3. The wounds of the soldiers are many, for they were fighting a great battle near the rampart. 4. Men in Gaul gave many kinds of grain to Caesar's legions. 5. There are many kinds of men in Gaul. 6. The soldiers are in great danger on account of the javelins.

LESSON XV.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.—i STEMS.

121. To Identify an i Stem Noun.

The following classes of nouns have i stems.

(a) Parisyllabic nouns (*i. e.*, having the same number of syllables in nominative and genitive singular), except **pater**, **māter**, **frāter**, and certain others less common.

(b) Nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**. These are always neuter.

(c) Apparent monosyllabic stems ending in two consonants, *e. g.*, **urbs**; apparent stem, **urb**; real stem, **urbi**.

(d) Most nouns ending in **-ns** and **-rs**.

Note.—The irregular **vīs**, *force*, pl., *strength*, has two stems; sing., **vī**, plur., **vīri**.

122. The **i** of the stem disappears in some forms and contracts with the case endings in others, with the result that the unchanged stem is regularly seen in the genitive plural only.

123. The **i** of the stem causes the following modifications in the case terminations (35):

(a) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines in **-is** sometimes ends in **-im**.

(b) The ablative singular of neuter nouns always ends in **-ī**; also sometimes of masculines and feminines in **-is**.

(c) The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of neuter nouns end in **-ia**.

(d) The genitive plural always ends in **-ium**.

(e) The accusative plural of masculines and feminines ends in **-īs** or **-ēs**.

124.

Declension.

	turris, f.,	hostis, m.,	caedēs, f.,	imber, m.,
	<i>Stem,</i> turri,	hosti,	caedi,	imbri,
	tower.	enemy.	slaughter.	shower.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	turris	hostis	caedēs	imber
<i>Gen.</i>	turris	hostis	caedis	imbris
<i>Dat.</i>	turri	hosti	caedi	imbri
<i>Acc.</i>	turrim (-em)	hostem	caedem	imbrem
<i>Voc.</i>	turris	hostis	caedēs	imber
<i>Abl.</i>	turri (-e)	hoste	caede	imbre (-i)
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs	imbrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	turrium	hostium	caedium	imbrium
<i>Dat.</i>	turribus	hostibus	caedibus	imbribus
<i>Acc.</i>	turris (-ēs)	hostis (-ēs)	caedis (-ēs)	imbris (-ēs)
<i>Voc.</i>	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs	imbrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	turribus	hostibus	caedibus	imbribus
	mare, ¹ n.,	animal, n.,	urbs, f.,	vīs, f.,
	<i>Stem,</i> mari,	animāli,	urbi,	vīs (force)
	sea.	animal.	city.	force; strength.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal	urbs	vī, vīri,
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis	urbis	vīs (rare)
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animāli	urbi	vī (rare)
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal	urbem	vim
<i>Voc.</i>	mare	animal	urbs	vīs
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	animāli	urbe	vī
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	maria	animālia	urbēs	vīrēs (strength)
<i>Gen.</i>	marium	animālium	urbium	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	maribus	animālibus	urbibus	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	maria	animalia	urbis (-ēs)	vīris (-ēs)
<i>Voc.</i>	maria	animalia	urbēs	vīrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	maribus	animālibus	urbibus	vīribus

¹ All cases of **mare** are not found in actual use; but it is the most common of its class, and is, therefore, selected as the type.

125.

Gender in the Third Declension.

No exact rules can be given for determining the gender of a third declension noun; but the following will serve as a guide, though many exceptions occur.

(a) **Masculines.**—Nouns ending in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -es (gen. -itis).

(b) **Feminines.**—Nouns ending in -ās, -ēs (gen. -is), -ūs (gen. -ūtis or -ūdis), -is, -ys, -s following a consonant, -dō, -gō, -iō.

(c) **Neuters.**—Nouns ending in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -t, -men, -ar, -ur, -us (gen. -eris or -oris).

126.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, ¹ prep. with abl., <i>from, away from.</i>	hostis, -is, m., <i>enemy</i> ; pl. in military sense, <i>the enemy.</i>
cīvis, -is, m., <i>citizen.</i>	mare, -is, n., <i>sea.</i>
cīvitās, -tātis, f., <i>state; citizenship.</i>	mōns, -tis, m., <i>mountain.</i>
cohors, -rtis, f., <i>cohort</i> (the legion was made up of ten cohorts: equivalent to the modern <i>company</i> of a regiment).	postulō, -āre, <i>demand.</i>
	turris, -is, f., <i>tower.</i>
	urbs, urbis, f., <i>city.</i>

¹ ā before consonants; ab before vowels and h.

127. 1. Populus Rōmānus cīvitātem multīs mīlitibus dabat. 2. Caesar cohortem sociōrum aggerem hostium oppugnāre iubet. 3. Labiēnus tribus (*three*) cohortibus mīlitum montem occupābat. 4. Caesar multōs obsidēs ā cīvibus postulābit, nam cīvēs frūmentum hostibus populī Rōmānī dant. 5. Magna est silva in monte trāns flūmen. 6. Nautae magnam praedam ex urbe ad mare carrīs portābant. 7. Multum frūmentum ab incolīs magnae urbis postulābō, nam hostēs Caesaris sunt. 8. Caesar magnum montem occupābat et cohortēs hostium expectābat. 9. Ad¹ mare magnus est mons et in monte pulchra urbs. 10. Caesar et mīlītēs magnam turrīm hostium tēlis expugnābunt.

¹ Near; see 61.

Remark.—The -ēs forms of the accusative plural of i stem words will be used throughout the book.

128. 1. The citizens possess a great state in the mountains. 2. We shall order the sailors to carry the booty from the cities to the sea. 3. You will order a cohort of the legion to assault the tower on the mountain. 4. The Germans will take flight to the forest on the mountain. 5. The soldiers of the legions saw the mountains across the river. 6. There are great mountains in Gaul near the sea.



Common Roman Coins.

1. Denarius, silver coin worth about seventeen cents.
2. Quinarius, one-half denarius.
3. Sestertius, one-quarter denarius.

LESSON XVI.

THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

129. The Fourth Declension.

The nominative singular of nouns of the fourth declension ends in **-us**. The genitive singular ends in **-ūs**.

Nouns of the fourth declension are declined as follows:

exercitus, m., <i>army.</i>	cornū, n., horn; <i>wing of an army.</i>
SING.— <i>Nom.</i> exercitus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i> exercitūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i> exercituī	cornū
<i>Acc.</i> exercitum	cornū
<i>Voc.</i> exercitus	cornū
<i>Abl.</i> exercitū	cornū
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i> exercitūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i> exercituum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i> exercitibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i> exercitūs	cornua
<i>Voc.</i> exercitūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i> exercitibus	cornibus

130. Domus is irregular, having some forms of the second declension. The form most frequently used is placed first; the form **domī** means *at home* (135). It is thus declined:

domus, f., house.	
SING.— <i>Nom.</i> domus	PLUR.—domūs
<i>Gen.</i> domūs, domī	domuum, domōrum
<i>Dat.</i> domuī, domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i> domum	domōs, domūs
<i>Voc.</i> domus	domūs
<i>Abl.</i> domō, domū	domibus

131. Gender in the Fourth Declension.—Most nouns in **-us** are masculine:

manus, f., *hand, band*; **domus**, f., *house*, are the chief exceptions.

Nouns in **-ū** are neuter: the only neuter of common occurrence is **cornū**.

132. Nouns ending in **-us** occur in the second, third, and fourth declensions. No exact rule can be given for determining to what declension a nominative in **-us** belongs. If it contains the supine stem of a verb, or if it ends in **-tus** or **-sus**, it is most probably of the fourth declension. The genitive singular will determine positively.

133. The Fifth Declension.

The nominative singular of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **-ēs**. The genitive singular ends in **-ēī**. Only two, **rēs** and **diēs**, are complete. Of the rest, most lack the plural entirely, a few have the nominative and accusative. All nouns of this declension are feminine, except **diēs**; even this is sometimes feminine in the singular.

134. Nouns of the fifth declension are declined as follows:

diēs, m., f., <i>day</i> .			rēs, f., <i>thing</i> .		
SING.—Nom.	diēs	PLUR.—diēs	SING.—Nom.	rēs	PLUR.—rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	Gen.	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	Dat.	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	Acc.	rem	rēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	Voc.	rēs	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	Abl.	rē	rēbus

135. The Locative Case.—Not all the Latin cases have survived. There was originally a case called the locative, exclusively used to express location, the place where a thing was situated or an event occurred. In the singular of the first and second declensions this case was identical in form with the genitive, elsewhere with the ablative.

(a) The locative case is still found in proper names of towns and islands and in the noun *domus*, e. g.:

Rōmae, at Rome, in Rome; *Tarentī*, at Tarentum; *Athēnīs*, in Athens; *domī*, at home.

136.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival; *ap-*
proach.

exercitus, -ūs, m., army.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack.

lītus, -oris, n., coast, shore.

longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG.

nāvigō, -āre, NAVIGATE, sail (a
ship); sail (on the sea).

nāvis, -is, f., ship.

Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum* (a city in
Gaul).

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

sustineō, -ēre, SUSTAIN, withstand;
hold out (against siege).

Idiom.

nāvis longa, war ship.

137. 1. Caesar *legiōnes* ex urbe ad montēs sē fugae mandāre iubet et adventum auxiliōrum expectāre. 2. Nautae mare nāvibus nāvigant. 3. Nautae ad insulās nāvigābunt, nam magna praeda in urbibus insulārum est. 4. Nāvēs longae mīlitum in litore sunt. 5. Caesar Rōmae est, sed auxilia Ocelī eum (*him*) expectant. 6. Nautae multās nāvēs longās habent, quibus (*in which*) ad litora insulārum nāvigābunt. 7. Caesar exercitum montem occupāre iubet et impetum hostium sustinēre. 8. Cohors legiōnis aggerem et turrim occupābat et impetum Belgārum sustinēbat. 9. Cōpiae Rōmānae adventum Caesaris Oceli expectābunt. 10. Impetum hostium in litore sustinēbimus.

138. 1. Caesar with a war ship will sail to the coast of the island. 2. Caesar is at Rome. 3. I saw Labiēnus at Ocelum. 4. Many sailors sail the sea in ships. 5. I saw the arrival of the sailors on the shore. 6. We shall withstand the attack of the enemy on the tower.

LESSON XVII.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

139. The Nine Pronominals.—Nine important adjectives are irregular in the genitive and dative singular, these cases ending respectively in *-ius* and *-ī* for all genders. A separate vocative is wanting.

In their irregular forms, as well as in meaning, they resemble pronouns, and hence are called pronominal adjectives.

These adjectives are:

<i>alius</i> , other	<i>tōtus</i> , whole, entire	<i>alter</i> , the other (of two)
<i>nūllus</i> , no, none	<i>ūllus</i> , any	<i>neuter</i> , neither (of two)
<i>sōlus</i> , only, alone	<i>ūnus</i> , one; only	<i>uter</i> , which (of two)

- (a) *alius* has *aliud* in nom. and acc. sing. neut.
alter retains *e* in declension and its gen. sing. is usually *-ius*.
neuter and *uter* drop *e* in declension.

Declension.

140. The singular of these words is declined as follows; the plural¹ is regular.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i> ²	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	————	————	————	————	————	————
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>utriūs</i>	<i>utriūs</i>	<i>utriūs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	————	————	————	————	————	————
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

¹ The plural of *ūnus* signifies *only, alone*, except when limiting a noun plural in form but singular in meaning, *e. g.*: *ūna castra*, *one camp*.

² Very rare: *alterius* usually replaces it.

141. Idiomatic Use of Alius and Alter.—Where in English we say *one and another*, e. g.:

One gave grain, another gave arms;

the Latin does not employ *ūnus* and *alius*, but *alius* is repeated, e. g.:

alius frūmentum dabat, arma alius.

For of two persons or things, *A* and *B*, if the attention be fixed on *A*, *B* is *the other*; if on *B*, *A* is *the other*: hence both may be called *the other*.

(a) The same principle extends to four persons or things, of which two are subjects and two objects, or to series of pairs, subject and object, e. g.:

One tells one thing, another tells another.

Here each of the subjects is *the other*; each of the objects is *the other*: hence, the idiom condenses into *alius alia nūntiat*; literally, *another tells other things*.

142.

VOCABULARY.

iter, itineris, n., road; march; right of way.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, usage; pl. also character.

per, prep. with acc., through.

portus, -ūs, m., PORT, harbor.

prōvincia, -ae, f., PROVINCE.

rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, circumstance.

143. 1. *Multae rēs Caesarem ad bellum cum aliīs populīs incitābant.* 2. *Mōre populi Rōmānī iter per prōvinciam ūllī dare nōn audeō.* 3. *Nūllī iter trāns flūmen dabō.* 4. *Militēs unius legiōnis in Galliā sunt.* 5. *Nautae ex aliō portū nāvigant.* 6. *Utrī cōnsulum iter per prōvinciam dabō?* *Neutrī.* 7. *Alterī cōsulī prōvinciam dabat, alterī magnum exercitum.* 8. *Alter cōsul alterum portum occupābat.* 9. *Exercitus alterius cōsulis magnus nōn est.* 10. *Alii nautae ex aliō portū nāvigābunt.*

144. 1. *To which of the towns shall I carry the booty?* 2. *The army of another people will possess the lands.* 3. *You tell one thing to one consul, another to the other.* 4. *By the custom of the Belgians I give no Roman the right of way.* 5. *The valor of entire Gaul does not surpass the valor of Rome alone.* 6. *Many other circumstances urge the consul to battle.*

LESSON XVIII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

145. Adjectives of the third declension may have:

(a) The masculine, feminine, and neuter differing in form in the nominative singular. These are called **adjectives of three terminations**. All adjectives in **-er** belong to this class (except **dēgener**, *degenerate*; **pauper**, *poor*; **ūber**, *fertile*, which belong to class (c) and are not found in Caesar). The feminine and neuter end respectively in **-is** and **-e**.

(b) The masculine and feminine alike, the neuter differing. These are called **adjectives of two terminations**, and may end in **-is** (m., f.), **-e** (n.) or in **-ior** (m., f.), **-ius** (n.). Those in **-ior** are comparatives.

(c) The three genders alike. These are called **adjectives of one termination** and have a variety of nominative forms. All present participles (nom. in **-ns**) are of this class.

146.

Stems and Case Forms.

1. Adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives and a few other words, are regularly declined as **i**-stems: *i. e.*, abl. sing. in **-ī**; gen. pl. in **-ium**; acc. pl. m. and f. in **-īs** or **-ēs**; nom., acc., voc. pl. n. in **-ia**.

2. Comparatives and **vetus** (and a few less common) are true consonant stems.

3. Present participles used as adjectives have abl. sing. in **-ī**; as true participles, abl. sing. in **-e**.

4. Of the three-termination adjectives in **-er**, **e** is retained in declension in **celer** only.

147. To Distinguish Adjectives in -er of the Second Declension from Adjectives in -er of the Third Declension.

Rule.—Adjectives in -er of the Second Declension have two syllables, except integer, lūdicer, sinister, and compounds in -fer and -ger: adjectives in -er of the Third Declension have more than two syllables, except ācer, celer, puter; pauper, ūber.

148. Declension.

(a) Three terminations:

ācer, *keen, sharp.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

celer, *swift.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	celer	celeris	celere
<i>Gen.</i>	celeris	celeris	celeris
<i>Dat.</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī
<i>Acc.</i>	celerem	celerem	celere
<i>Voc.</i>	celer	celeris	celere
<i>Abl.</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
<i>Gen.</i>	celerium ¹	celerium	celerium
<i>Dat.</i>	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
<i>Acc.</i>	celerīs (-ēs)	celerīs (-ēs)	celerīa
<i>Voc.</i>	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
<i>Abl.</i>	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

¹ The gen. plur. of celer is not found in actual use.

(b) Two terminations:

	<i>levis, light; capricious.</i>		<i>levior, lighter; more capricious.</i>	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>leve</i>	<i>levior</i>	<i>levius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>leviōris</i>	<i>leviōris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>levī</i>	<i>levī</i>	<i>leviōrī</i>	<i>leviōrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>levem</i>	<i>leve</i>	<i>leviōrem</i>	<i>levius</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>leve</i>	<i>levior</i>	<i>levius</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>levī</i>	<i>levī</i>	<i>leviōre</i>	<i>leviōre</i>
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>levēs</i>	<i>levia</i>	<i>leviōrēs</i>	<i>leviōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>levium</i>	<i>levium</i>	<i>leviōrum</i>	<i>leviōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>levibus</i>	<i>levibus</i>	<i>leviōribus</i>	<i>leviōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>levīs (-es)</i>	<i>levia</i>	<i>leviōrēs</i>	<i>leviōra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>levēs</i>	<i>levia</i>	<i>leviōrēs</i>	<i>leviōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>levibus</i>	<i>levibus</i>	<i>leviōribus</i>	<i>leviōribus</i>

(c) One termination:

	<i>audāx, bold, courageous.</i>		<i>vetus, old.</i>	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audacibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

	<i>recēns, recent, fresh.</i>		<i>pugnāns, fighting.</i>	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>pugnāns</i>	<i>pugnāns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>recentis</i>	<i>recentis</i>	<i>pugnantis</i>	<i>pugnantis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>recentī</i>	<i>recentī</i>	<i>pugnantī</i>	<i>pugnantī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>recentem</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>pugnantem</i>	<i>pugnāns</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>pugnāns</i>	<i>pugnāns</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>recentī¹</i>	<i>recentī</i>	<i>pugnante (-ī)¹</i>	<i>pugnante (-ī)</i>

¹ *Recēns* is a true adjective; *pugnāns*, a present participle: note the difference in the abl. sing. (146, 3).

PLUR.—Nom.	recentēs	recentia	pugnantēs	pugnantia
Gen.	recentium	recentium	pugnantium	pugnantium
Dat.	recentibus	recentibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus
Acc.	recentīs (-ēs)	recentia	pugnantīs (-ēs)	pugnantia
Voc.	recentēs	recentia	pugnantēs	pugnantia
Abl.	recentibus	recentibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus

plūs, more.

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	_____	plūs
Gen.	_____	plūris
Dat.	_____	_____
Acc.	_____	plūs
Voc.	_____	_____
Abl.	_____	plūre
PLUR.—Nom.	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	plūrium	plurium
Dat.	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Voc.	_____	_____
Abl.	plūribus	plūribus

149.

VOCABULARY.

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access.*
 Britannia, -ae, f., *BRITAIN, Eng-*
land.

commūnis, -e, adj., *COMMON.*

complūrēs, -a, pl., adj., *very many.*

dēliberō, -āre, *consult, DELIBER-*
ATE.

difficilis, -e, adj., *DIFFICULT.*

facilis, -e, adj., *easy.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, confidence; pro-*
tection.

Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Haedui (a*
Gallic tribe).

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed.*

nāvālis, -e, adj., *NAVAL.*

nōbilis, -e, adj., *NOBLE.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all.*

Venetī, -ōrum, m., *the Veneti (a*
maritime tribe of the west coast
of Gaul).

150. 1. Omnēs aditūs sunt itineribus difficilibus. 2. In commūnī conciliō Germānōrum dē bellō Rōmānōrum dēliberābant. 3. Complūrēs virī nōbilēs, lēgātī Haeduōrum, amīcitiam et fidem Caesaris implōrābunt. 4. Venetī complūrēs nāvēs habent, quibus (*in which*) in Britanniam navi-

gant. 5. Iter per montēs in Galliam difficile est; sed nullum iter aliud est. 6. Milites et nautae Rōmānōrum multīs proeliīs nāvālibus Venetōs superābant. 7. Lēgātus Rōmānus tēla hostium nōn vitābat, sed incolumis est. 8. Mōre Germānōrum, concilium communē totius Germāniae convocant et dē periculīs itineris dēliberant. 9. Nullus aditus ad locum castrōrum est. 10. Belgae sē fugae in castra mandābunt, nam periculum commūne vitābunt.

151. 1. The only approach to the camp is by a difficult road. 2. The Veneti fight a battle with the Romans on the sea. 3. All the Haedui begged the protection and friendship of Caesar. 4. Caesar is safe, but the wounds of Labienus are many. 5. To deliberate in a common council is a difficult thing. 6. The road through the province is easy.



Roman soldiers, mailed and carrying shields.

LESSON XIX.

THE VERB.

Present System of the Indicative, Third Conjugation.

152.

Formation.

The present stem of the third conjugation ends in -ĕ (19, 20).

(a) The present and imperfect tenses are formed as in the other conjugations.

(b) The future tense in the third and fourth conjugations has the tense sign -ĕ.

153.

Conjugation.

regō, *I rule*; pres. inf., **regere**, *to rule*; pres. stem, **rege**.

(a) Present:

regō, *I rule (am ruling, do rule).*

regis, *you rule.*

regit, *he rules.*

regimus, *we rule.*

regitis, *you rule.*

regunt, *they rule.*

(b) Imperfect:

regēbam, *I was ruling, I ruled.*

regēbās, *you were ruling.*

regēbat, *he was ruling.*

regēbāmus, *we were ruling.*

regēbātis, *you were ruling.*

regēbant, *they were ruling.*

(c) Future:

regam, *I shall rule.*

regēs, *you will rule.*

reget, *he will rule.*

regēmus, *we shall rule.*

regētis, *you will rule.*

regent, *they will rule.*

154.

Imperfect and Future Indicative of sum.

(a) Imperfect:

eram, *I was.*

erās, *you were.*

erat, *he was.*

erāmus, *we were.*

erātis, *you were.*

erant, *they were.*

(b) Future:

erō, *I shall be.*

eris, *you will be.*

erit, *he will be.*

erimus, *we shall be.*

eritis, *you shall be.*

erunt, *they shall be.*

155.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōstituō, -ere, station; decide, de- termine.</i>	<i>gerō, -ere, carry on, wage (war); carry; perform.</i>
<i>contendō, -ere, endeavor; CON- TEND; hasten.</i>	<i>incolō, -ere, inhabit, dwell in.</i>
<i>dividō, -ere, DIVIDE, separate.</i>	<i>mittō, -ere, send.</i>
<i>dūcō, -ere, lead, guide; haul; con- struct.</i>	<i>pōnō, -ere, place, establish.</i>
	<i>redūcō, -ere, lead back, bring back.</i>
	<i>relinquō, -ere, leave, abandon.</i>

Idioms.

bellum gerere, to wage war, carry on war.

castra pōnere, to pitch camp.

magnum iter, a forced march.

156. 1. Caesar magnīs itineribus ad Belgās contendere cōstituēbat. 2. Magnum flūmen Rhēnus Germāniam ab agrīs Gallōrum dividit. 3. Carrōs per montēs magnō periculō dūcent. 4. Gallī oppidum Ōcelum incolunt et Rōmānōs prōvinciā prohibent. 5. Multa iūmenta et carrōs in urbem mittam et praedam mīlitum ē domibus redūcam. 6. Belgae castra in silvīs pōnent et adventum Caesaris expectābunt. 7. Hīberna hostibus relinquam, et exercitum magnīs itineribus in prōvinciam redūcam. 8. Mōre populī Rōmānī cōsul castra in monte pōnet et bellum cum incolīs montium geret. 9. In Galliam tōtō cum exercitū contendent et nūntiōs cum litterīs ad Caesarem mittent. 10. Gallus trēs (three) legiōnēs exercitūs Caesaris per silvās ad mare dūcēbat.

157. 1. I shall not abandon (my) friends to the enemy. 2. Caesar will wage war in Germany and lead back the legions across the Rhine into Gaul. 3. I am sending a messenger to the harbor with a letter. 4. I shall hasten with many ships to Britain and bring back much grain for the army. 5. You will pitch camp in the forest and wage war with the Germans. 6. I determine to hasten by forced marches from the city into Gaul.

LESSON XX.

COMPARISON.

158. The quality expressed by an adjective may exist in different degrees. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, superlative.

(a) Adjectives have an inflection called **comparison** to show difference of degree.

(b) Participles used as adjectives are also subject to comparison.

159. Formation of the Comparative and Superlative.

(a) To form the comparative, add the terminations **-ior** (m., f.), **-ius** (n.) to the **base** (35) of the positive.

(b) To form the superlative, add the terminations **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um**, to the **base** of the positive; that is, to the stem lacking its final vowel, *e. g.*:

- * altus, altior, altissimus, *high, higher, highest.*
- fortis, fortior, fortissimus, *brave, braver, bravest.*
- audāx, audācior, audācissimus, *bold, bolder, boldest.*
- amāns, amantior, amantissimus, *loving, more loving, most loving.*

160. Exceptions in Superlative Formation.

(a) Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive. The comparative is regular, *e. g.*:

pulcher,	<i>beautiful,</i>	pulchrior,	pulcherrimus.
miser,	<i>miserable,</i>	miserior,	miserimus.
ācer,	<i>keen,</i>	ācrior,	ācerrimus.
celer,	<i>swift,</i>	celerior,	celerrimus.

(b) Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the base of the positive. The comparative is regular. These are:

facilis ,	<i>easy</i> ,	facilior ,	facillimus .
difficilis ,	<i>difficult</i> ,	difficilior ,	difficillimus .
similis ,	<i>like</i> ,	similior ,	simillimus .
dissimilis ,	<i>unlike</i> ,	dissimilior ,	dissimillimus .
humilis ,	<i>low</i> ,	humilior ,	humillimus .
gracilis ,	<i>slender</i> ,	gracilior ,	gracillimus .

(c) Adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, except those in **-quus**, compare by means of the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, e. g.:

idōneus, *suitable*; **magis idōneus**, **maximē idōneus**.

161. Idiomatic Uses of the Comparative and Superlative.

(a) The comparative may express *rather* or *too*, e. g.:

longius iter, *a rather long march*; **plūribus praesentibus**, *when too many were present*.

(b) The superlative may express *very*, e. g.:

altissimum flūmen, *a very deep river*.

(c) The adverb **quam**, *how*, *as* (though in this idiom incapable of separate translation) prefixed to a superlative expresses the *greatest possible* degree of the quality, e. g.:

quam maximum numerum iūmentōrum coemere, *to purchase the greatest possible number of pack animals*.

(d) Having no masculine or feminine singular to agree with a noun, **plūs** is forced in the singular to the construction of a neuter noun, and as such governs a genitive (47, e).

Remark.—For declension of comparatives, see **levior**, 148, b. Superlatives are declined like **bonus**.

162.

VOCABULARY.

ac, see *atque*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *keen, vigorous, severe*.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle*.

agmen, -minis, n., *army (on the march), column (of men)*.

altitūdō, -dinis, f., ALTITUDE, *height, depth*.

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep* (used of vertical extent either direction).

atque (before consonants often

ac), conj., *and, and also* (connects words and statements of which the second is the more important).

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, valiant*.

īnstruō, -ere, *draw up, arrange*.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new*.

pars, partis, f., *part; direction*.

prō, prep. with abl., *in front, before* (of place), *in behalf of, for*.

quam, conj., *than*.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*.

Idiom.

novissimum agmen, *the rear (of an army)*.

163. 1. Caesar fortissimōs militēs ad Germānōs mittet. 2. Labienus aciem prō castris instruit atque ācerimō proeliō cum Germānīs contendit. 3. Rhēnus flūmen longior atque altior est quam Rhodanus. 4. Novissimum agmen impetum hostium sustinēbat. 5. Ācerima hominum genera sunt multis in partibus Galliae. 6. Cōpiae Belgārum trāns altius flūmen aciem instruēbant atque hostēs expectābant. 7. Rōmānī multa bella ācerima prō sociīs gerēbant. 8. Aliam partem militum trāns altum flūmen mittit, aliam in montem magnae altitudinis. 9. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae. 10. Auxilia in novissimō agmine cōstituit, nam tēla in proeliīs vītant.

164. 1. A new army hastens into Gaul. 2. The river Rhone is very deep in many places. 3. Caesar draws up the battle-line and fights a very severe battle. 4. The bravest of the soldiers are in front of the camp. 5. Caesar leads back the brave auxiliaries out of the battle into camp, for they have many severe wounds. 6. The height of the mountain is great.

LESSON XXI.

COMPARISON (Continued).

165.

Irregular Comparison.

(a) Several important adjectives have forms of comparison wholly irregular and based on different stems.

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	<i>good, better, best.</i>
malus,	pēior,	pessimus,	<i>bad, worse, worst.</i>
magnus,	māior,	maximus,	<i>great, greater, greatest.</i>
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	<i>little, less, least.</i>
multus,	plūs, n.,	plūrimus,	<i>much, more, most.</i>
vetus,	vetustior,	veterrimus,	<i>old, older, oldest.</i>

(b) The positive forms of the following are rare, and generally occur as plural nouns signifying respectively *foreigners, the gods of the lower world, posterity, the gods above.*

exterus	exterior, <i>outer,</i>	extrēmus	or extimus,	<i>outmost.</i>
inferus	inferior, <i>lower,</i>	infimus	or imus,	<i>lowest.</i>
posterus	posterior, <i>later, after,</i>	postrēmus	or postumus,	<i>last.</i>
superus	superior, <i>higher,</i>	suprēmus	or summus,	<i>highest.</i>

(c) Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive in use as a true adjective, but are formed from stems found in adverbs and prepositions.

ADVERB OR PREPOSITION.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cis, citrā, <i>on this side of,</i>	citerior, <i>hither,</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost.</i>
in, intrā, <i>in, within,</i>	interior, <i>inner,</i>	intimus, <i>inmost.</i>
prae, prō, <i>before, in front,</i>	prior, <i>former,</i>	prīmus, <i>first.</i>
prope, <i>near,</i>	propior, <i>nearer,</i>	proximus, <i>nearest.</i>
ultrā, <i>beyond,</i>	ulterior, <i>farther,</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest.</i>

166. Idiomatic Adjectives of Position.

Expressions denoting the *top of, bottom of, middle of, extreme* or *end of*, always employ adjectives agreeing with the noun, instead of two nouns, as in English. The adjectives commonly used thus are **summus**, for *the top of*; **infimus** or **imus**, for *the bottom of*; **medius**, for *the middle of*; **extrēmus**, for *the extreme of, end of*, e. g.:

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*; **in mediō flūmine**, *in the middle of the river*.

167. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -ium, pl. f., *the Alps*.

contineō, -ēre, *bound* (in geographical sense).

extrēmus, -a, -um, superl. adj., *farthest, extreme*.

itaque, conj., *therefore, accordingly*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, middle of*.

prope, prep. with acc., and adv. *near; nearly, almost*.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, the rest of*.

studium, -ī (-iī), n., *zeal, enthusiasm*.

summus, -a, -um, superl. adj., *highest, greatest*.

ultrā, prep. with acc. and adv., *beyond, past; farther*.

vallum, -ī, n., *WALL, breastwork*.

vexō, -āre, v. tr., **VEX**, *annoy, harass; ravage*.

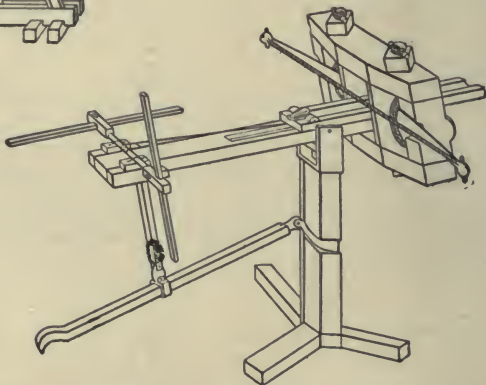
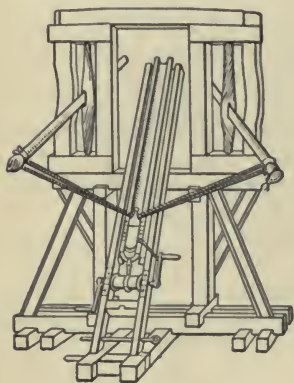
Idiom.

unā ex parte, *on one side*.

168. 1. Proximum iter in Galliam ulteriōrem per Alpēs est. 2. Reliquae cohortēs vallum prō castrīs summō studiō oppugnābant, sed hostēs in mediīs castrīs tēla vitābant. 3. Exercitus Caesaris māiōra hostium castra in summō monte expugnat. 4. Māximā virtūte cohortēs īnsulam in mediō flūmine nāvibus oppugnant. 5. Alpēs Galliam ulteriōrem unā ex parte continent. 6. Germānī agrōs in extrēmā Galliā vexant, itaque Caesar ad eōs (*them*) magnīs itineribus contendit. 7. Iter per Alpēs in Galliam propius est quam per silvās in litore. 8. Germānī castra in mediīs silvīs pōnent atque adventum Rōmānōrum expectābunt.

9. Vallum magnae altitudinis castra continet. 10. Rōmān-
 ōrum mīlites meliōrēs et fortiōres sunt quam mīlites Gal-
 lorum, atque māiōre studiō pugnant.

169. 1. On one side of the camp is a rather high wall.
 2. With the greatest enthusiasm the brave soldiers attack the
 remaining gate of the town. 3. Caesar's house is in the mid-
 dle of the field. 4. The camp is on the top of a mountain.
 5. I am a better and braver man than Labienus. 6. The
 Germans will pitch camp in the middle of the forest.



Roman artillery, called **tormenta**, from *torqueō*, *twist*, the power being applied by twisted ropes. The chief hurling engines of the Roman armies were the **ballista** and **catapulta**.

LESSON XXII.

ADVERBS.

170.

Formation of Adverbs.

There are two classes of adverbs: (a) Those which are formed from adjectives. (b) Those not so formed. For the formation of the latter no law can be given. Adverbs which are formed from adjectives are formed according to the following law:

If the adjective is of the second-first-second declension, the adverb is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the adjective; but if the adjective is of the third declension, add *-ter* to the stem, e. g.:

carus, adv. *carē*; *pulcher*, adv. *pulchrē*; *miser*, adv. *miserē*; *acer*, adv. *ācriter*; *levis*, adv. *leviter*; *audāx* forms *audācter*.

Remark.—Occasionally the accusative singular neuter of an adjective is used as the adverb, e. g.:

facilis, adv. *facile*, *easily*; *multus*, adv. *multum*, *much*; *plūrimus*, adv. *plūrimum*, *very*, *most*.

171.

Comparison of Adverbs.

(a) The comparative of an adverb derived from an adjective is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; and its superlative is formed by changing the *-us* of the superlative of the adjective to *-ē*, e. g.:

carē, *carius*, *carissimē*; *pulchrē*, *pulchrius*, *pulcherrimē*; *miserē*, *miserius*, *miserrimē*; *ācriter*, *ācerius*, *ācerrimē*; *leviter*, *levius*, *levissimē*; *audācter*, *audācius*, *audācissimē*.

(*l*) The following adverbs are irregular or defective:

bene,	melius,	optimē,	<i>well, better, best.</i>
male,	pēius,	pessimē,	<i>badly, worse, worst.</i>
diū,	diūtius,	diūtissimē,	<i>long (of time), longer, longest.</i>
— —	potius,	potissimum,	<i>— —, rather, first of all, chiefly.</i>
saepe,	saepius,	saeplissimē,	<i>often, more often, oftenest.</i>
satis,	satius,	— —	<i>enough, preferably, — —.</i>
magnopere,	magis,	maximē,	<i>greatly, more, most.</i>
parum,	minus,	minimē,	<i>little, less, least.</i>
multum (multō),	plūs,	plūrimum,	<i>much, more, most.</i>

172.

VOCABULARY.

ācritēr, adv., *fiercely, sharply.*

audācter, adv., *boldly.*

bene, adv., *well.*

cogitō, -āre, *think about, consider.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defense.*

diū, adv., *long, a long time.*

facile, adv., *easily.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely.*

magnopere, adv., *greatly.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, *fortification.*

perturbō, -āre, *disturb, trouble.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, even, certainly.*

nē . . quidem, cpd. adv., *not even* (emphatic word between nē and quidem).

saepe, adv., *often.*

tardō, -āre, *check, RETARD, delay.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*

173. 1. Timor, quidem, mentēs omnium auxiliōrum magnopere perturbābat. 2. Propter timōrem cohortēs nē dē dēfēnsiōne quidem castrōrum cogitābant, sed fugae in mediās silvās sē mandābant. 3. Militēs legiōnis impetum hostium ācritēr tardābant. 4. Propter vulnera militum Belgae impetum Rōmānōrum nōn diūtius sustinent. 5. Militēs vallum audācius oppugnant atque hostēs ācerrimōs facile superant. 6. Saepe Rōmānī impetūs Gallōrum fortiter tardābant; itaque Caesar Rōmānōs māximē laudābat atque cōs (*them*) virōs fortissimōs vocābat. 7. Melius est dē mūnitiōne castrōrum cogitāre quam dē fuga. 8. Nē Germānī quidem impetum Rōmānōrum diūtius sustinēbant. 9. Diū atque ācritēr reliquae cohortēs in summō

monte pugnābant. 10. Saepe mīlites dē dēfēnsiōne ac muni-
tiōne hibernōrum cogitant.

174. 1. Fear, indeed, often troubles the mind of a soldier, if (sī) he thinks too long¹ about battle. 2. Long and fiercely the Helvetians fought, but the Romans fought better. 3. Not even wounds check the valor of a brave soldier. 4. We shall boldly carry on war with the Germans, but the battles will disturb the mind of Caesar very much.² 5. The Germans were ravaging the lands of the Belgians more fiercely and more boldly. 6. They bravely withstood the attack of the troops a long time.

¹ 161, *a*. ² Superlative of *magnopere*.



Interior of Roman house, Pompeii (Restored).

LESSON XXIII.

NUMERALS.

175. Numerals are words expressing number and are divided into several classes.

(a) Cardinals are adjectives constituting the series of numbers used in counting; as, *one, two, three*.

(b) Ordinals are adjectives derived from the cardinals to express order or place; as, *first, second, third*.

(c) Distributives are adjectives expressing the grouping of numbers; as, *one by one* or *one apiece*.

(d) Numeral adverbs express repetition and answer the question "*how often*?" as, *once, twice, three times*.

A table of the first ten numerals is added for illustration.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
1	ūnus	prīmus	singulī	semel
2	duo	secundus	bīnī	bis
3	trēs	tertius	ternī	ter
4	quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quater
5	quīque	quīntus	quīnī	quīquīēs (-ēns)
6	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs (-ēns)
7	septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs (-ēns)
8	octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs (-ēns)
9	novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs (-ēns)
10	decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs (-ēns)

176.

Declension of Numerals.

I. Cardinals:

(a) Ūnus, *one*. See 140.

(b) Duo, *two*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

(c) *trēs*, *three*.

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trēs (trīs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

(d) All other cardinals are indeclinable except as follows:

(e) *Centum*, *one hundred*, is indeclinable, but *ducenti*, *two hundred*, *trecenti*, *three hundred*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bonus*.(f) *Mille*, *one thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural thousands (2000, 3000, etc.) it becomes a neuter noun (like the English *pair*, *dozen*) and governs the genitive (like the English *a pair of gloves*). It is then declined thus:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

e. g., *mille hominēs*, *a thousand men*; *mille mulierēs*, *a thousand women*; *mille bella*, *a thousand wars*: but *duo mīlia hominum*, *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousands of men*).

II. Ordinals and Distributives are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

177.

VOCABULARY.

<i>angustiae</i> , -ārum, f., <i>narrow pass</i> , <i>defile</i> .	<i>mille</i> , indecl.; pl. <i>mīlia</i> , -ium, n., <i>thousand</i> .
<i>angustus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>narrow</i> , <i>steep</i> .	<i>quadrāgintā</i> , adj., card. num. indecl., <i>forty</i> .
<i>decimus</i> , -a, -um, ord. num. adj., <i>tenth</i> .	<i>singulī</i> , -ae, -a, pl. adj., dist. num., <i>one by one</i> , <i>in single file</i> .
<i>duo</i> , -ae, -o, adj., card. num., <i>two</i> .	<i>trēs</i> , -ia, adj., card. num., <i>three</i> .
<i>labor</i> , -ōris, m., <i>LABOR</i> , <i>hardship</i> .	<i>vix</i> , adv., <i>scarcely</i> , <i>with difficulty</i> .

178. 1. *Iter per montēs angustum est ac difficile, et in eō (this) itinere milītēs vix singulōs carrōs dūcent*. 2. *Caesar cum tribus legiōnibus per angustiās summō labōre*

contendit. 3. Caesar cum duōbus milibus militum in Galliam ulteriōrem contendet. 4. Castra, quidem, angusta sunt ac parva; itaque hostes ea (*it*) facile expugnābunt. 5. Quadrāgintā milia militum in exercitū Caesaris sunt, sed Germānōs vix superābit. 6. Nē decima quidem legiō in extrēmā Germāniā pugnābit, nam multae rēs mentēs militum perturbābunt. 7. Mille hominēs in castris sunt, sed nē tria quidem milia militum fortissimōrum impetum Belgārum sustinēbunt. 8. Germānī Caesarem ā Labiēnō dīvident, atque exercitūs singulōs facile superābunt. 9. Labiēnus per angustiās et silvās ad Caesarem maximō labōre contendit. 10. In Galliam longō itinere contendit cum duābus legiōnibus et equitibus mille.

179. 1. I shall hasten into farther Gaul with one legion and a thousand cavalry. 2. The road through the Alps is narrow. 3. The river Rhine separates Gaul from Germany, and many thousands of Germans are in the forests across the Rhine. 4. The soldiers were hastening through the mountains with the greatest hardships. 5. The consul will give three thousand troops to Caesar. 6. Not even the fortifications will keep off the enemy from the camp.



Coin of Julius Caesar, a silver denarius, worth about seventeen cents, representing Caesar as Pontifex Maximus.

LESSON XXIV.

PRONOUNS.

180. (a) Pronouns represent nouns or point out and identify them. The first are called true pronouns; the second, adjective pronouns. The same word may serve both as a true pronoun and an adjective pronoun, *e. g.*:

Instead of saying, *Give me the book*, we may say *Give it to me*, where *it* represents *book*. So, for *Give me that book*, where *that* points out and identifies the *book* desired, we may say *Give me that*, where *that* represents a *book* that is clearly pointed out in some other way.

(b) Pronouns, true and adjective, are classified as **personal**, **possessive**, **demonstrative**, **relative**, **interrogative**, **relative indefinite**, **reciprocal**.

181. Personal Pronouns.

These are true pronouns and may be simple or reflexive.

(a) **Simple Personal Pronouns.**—These exist in the *first* and *second* persons only. The place of a *third* personal pronoun is supplied, when necessary, by a demonstrative, usually *is*, *ea*, *id* (186, 1). They are thus declined:

	FIRST PERSON.	SINGULAR. SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
Nom.	ego , <i>I</i>	tū , <i>you</i>	is , <i>he</i> ; ea , <i>she</i> ; id , <i>it</i>
Gen.	meī , <i>of me</i>	tuī , <i>of you</i>	See for declension, 187.
Dat.	mihi , <i>to (for) me</i>	tibi , <i>to (for) you</i>	
Acc.	mē , <i>me</i>	tē , <i>you</i>	
Voc.	— — —	tū , <i>you!</i>	
Abl.	mē , <i>with (from, by)</i> <i>me.</i>	tē , <i>with (from, by)</i> <i>you</i>	

PLURAL.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	
Gen.	{ nostrum, <i>of us</i> { nostrī,	{ vestrum, <i>of you</i> { vestrī,	
Dat.	nōbīs, <i>to (for) us</i>	vōbīs, <i>to (for) you</i>	
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	
Voc.	—	vōs, <i>you!</i>	
Abl.	nōbīs, <i>with (from, by) us</i>	vōbīs, <i>with (from, by) you</i>	

Remark.—The pronoun subject of a verb is expressed only when emphatic or in contrast with another subject, being sufficiently indicated elsewhere by the personal ending (24, c).

(b) **Reflexive Personal Pronouns.**—These refer always to the *subject of the sentence or clause* in which they stand. Hence they have no *direct cases* (nominative and vocative, 31, b), *e. g.*:

I saw myself: note how differently *myself* is used in *I saw him myself*, where *myself* is nominative case and agrees with the subject instead of merely referring to it.

The *first* and *second* personal pronouns serve as their own reflexives: there is a separate form for the *third* person. They are thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
Nom.	—	—	—
Gen.	meī, <i>of myself</i>	tuī, <i>of yourself</i>	suī, <i>of himself, herself, etc.</i>
Dat.	mihi, <i>to (for) myself</i>	tibi, <i>to (for) yourself</i>	sibi, <i>to (for) himself, etc.</i>
Acc.	mē, <i>myself</i>	tē, <i>yourself</i>	sē or sēsē, <i>himself, etc.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	mē, <i>with (from, by) myself</i>	tē, <i>with yourself, etc.</i>	sē or sēsē, <i>with himself, etc.</i>

PLURAL.		
Nom. —	—	—
Gen. { nostrum , of our- { nostrī , selves	{ vestrum , of your- { vestrī , selves	sui , of themselves.
Dat. nōbīs , to (for) our- selves	vōbīs , to (for) your- selves	sibi , to (for) themselves
Acc. nōs , ourselves	vōs , yourselves	sē or sēsē , themselves
Voc. —	—	—
Abl. nōbīs , with ourselves, etc.	vōbīs , with your- selves, etc.	sē or sēsē , with them- selves, etc.

Note.—It will be seen that there is no distinction of gender or number in the forms of the third person reflexive.

182. Possessive Pronouns.

These are adjective pronouns and may be **simple** or **reflexive**. They are inflected as adjectives of the second-first-second declension and agree in gender, number, and case with the *thing possessed*, the pronoun itself indicating the possessor.

(a) **Simple Possessive Pronouns.**—These are:

FIRST PERSON.

meus ,	mea ,	meum ,	<i>my</i> (one possessor)
noster ,	nostra ,	nostrum ,	<i>our</i> (more than one possessor)

SECOND PERSON.

tuus ,	tua ,	tuum ,	<i>your</i> (one possessor)
vester ,	vestra ,	vestrum ,	<i>your</i> (more than one possessor)

THIRD PERSON.

There is no simple possessive pronoun of the third person. Its place is supplied, when necessary, by the *genitive of a demonstrative*, usually is (186, 1).

eīus, *his, her, its*
eōrum (m., n.), **eārum** (f.), *their*.

(b) **Reflexive Possessive Pronouns.**—The first and second person possessive pronouns may be also reflexive. For the third person there is a separate form, the same for either one possessor or more than one:

suus, **sua**, **suum**, *his, her, its; their*

Possessive pronouns are usually not expressed when their omission would cause no misunderstanding, *e. g.*:

Caesar exercitum laudābat, *Caesar praised his army.*

183.

VOCABULARY.

accūsō, āre, ACCUSE, *blame.*

celeritās, -tātis, f., *speed, swiftness.*

celeriter, adv., *quickly, rapidly.*

cōnsilium, -ī, (-īi) n., *plan, design;*

COUNSEL, *advice.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus* (a Haeduan).

gladius, -ī (-īi), m., *sword.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander.*

iūdicō, -āre, JUDGE, *decide; express an opinion.*

male, adv., *badly.*

necō, -āre, *kill, slaughter.*

officium, -ī (-īi), n., *duty.*

praestō, -āre, *perform.*

probō, -āre, PROVE; *approve of.*

184. 1. Imperātor nostra cōnsilia probābat atque nōs maximē laudābat. Nōbis multa dōna dabit. 2. Bellum male geritis, lēgātī; itaque vōs ācriter accūsō. 3. Nostrī¹ magnum proelium cum Germānīs fortiter pugnābunt. 4. Belgae sēsē² fugae summā celeritāte mandābunt, sed eōs (*them*) mēcūm³ redūcam et in numerō hostium meōrum habēbō.⁴ 5. Equitēs nostrī multa milia hostium tēlis et gladiīs necābant. 6. Caesar Dīviciācum ad sē vocat et eum (*him*) ācriter accūsāt. 7. Ego, quidem, officium meum imperātōrī praestābō, sed tū tē fugae celeriter mandābis. 8. Celeriter litterās ad Caesarem in Galliam mittit atque suam victōriam nūntiat. 9. Caesar dē decimā legiōnē optimē iūdicat et cōnsilia lēgātī probat. 10. Caesar suōs¹ longō itinere per silvās sēcūm³ ducēbat.

¹ Adj. for noun: supply *troops* or *men* (81). ² sēsē does not differ in meaning from sē. ³ A word added to another word as its final syllable is called an **enclitic**. The preposition **cum** is always enclitic with the personal pronouns and usually with the relative (191). ⁴ To "*hold in the number of one's enemies*" was a Roman saying for "*put to death.*"

185. 1. I approve of your¹ speech, but your whole plan is not the best. 2. You will perform your duty to your state, for *you* are a good citizen. 3. You will express the best opinion about me. 4. I scarcely blame you, my friends. 5. The commander led his (troops) onto the top of the mountain with the utmost hardship. 6. The road through the pass is difficult for us, but we shall carry our baggage with us across the mountains. 7. Your army will put thousands of Germans to flight with their¹ swords. 8. The king of the Germans will kill himself with a sword.

¹ Express this word: is it reflexive?



Slinger.



Sling bullet of lead. These often bore a motto encouraging the slinger or insulting the enemy. The letters here are for **firmiter**, *steady*!

LESSON XXV.

PRONOUNS (Continued).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

186. These are **is**, **hīc**, **ille**, **iste**, **ipse**, **īdem**. They are used both as pure and adjective pronouns. They point out (**dēmōnstrō**) or identify a person or thing. They are of the third person (except **ipse**), and hence lack the vocative case.

(1) **Is** is the weakest of the demonstratives, an unemphatic *this* or *that*, often used as a mere third personal pronoun, *he*, *she*, *it* (181, a). For the use of its genitive as a possessive, see 182, a.

(2) **Hīc** is the emphatic *this*.

(3) **Ille** is *that* as contrasted with *this*.

(4) **Iste** usually has a reference to a second person, *that of yours*. It also is used to imply inferiority or contempt.

(5) **Ipse** emphasizes a noun or personal pronoun in any person. It is often called the *intensive* pronoun, *e. g.*:

tū ipse litterās portābās, *you were bringing the letter yourself*; **ipse Caesar virōs laudat**, *Caesar himself praises the men*: note how different from the reflexive, **Caesar sē laudat**, *Caesar praises himself*.

(6) **Īdem** (= **is** + **dem**, a suffix), *the same*.

187. Declension of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

		SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eī (iī)</i>	<i>eae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>

SINGULAR.						
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL.						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

SINGULAR.						
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>

PLURAL.						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

	MASC.	SINGULAR. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	eīdem (iī-, ī-)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)	eīsdem (iīs-, īs-)

188.

VOCABULARY.

causa , -ae, f., CAUSE; <i>condition; case (at law).</i>	malus , -a, -um, adj., <i>bad.</i>
causā , abl.: governs gen. and follows the noun it governs; <i>for the sake of.</i>	obsidiō , -ōnis, f., <i>siege; oppression.</i>
committō , -ere, <i>join (lit., send together).</i>	opiniō , -ōnis, f., <i>opinion; belief.</i>
contrā , prep. with acc., <i>against</i> , CONTRARY to.	quoque , conj. (always follows the word it modifies); <i>also.</i>
	salūs , ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i>
	servus , -ī, m., <i>slave.</i>

Idiom.

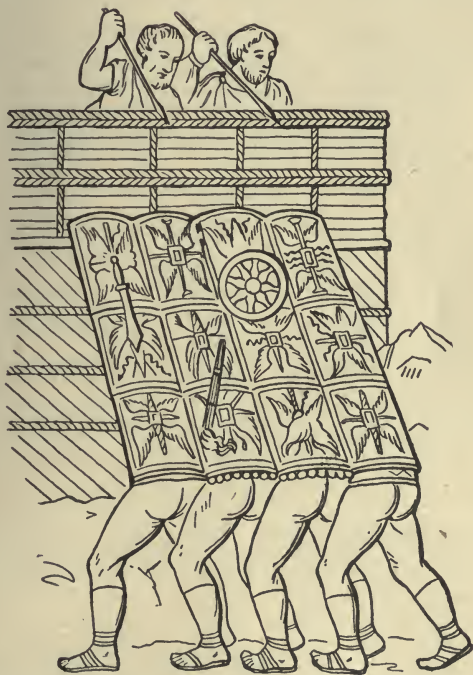
proelium committere, to join battle, begin battle.

189. 1. Contrā opiniōnem omnium Ocelum hanc obsidiōnem diū sustinēbat. 2. Ille imperātor in exercitū suō multōs servōs habēbat. 3. Iste exercitus sē fugae mandābit, nam, ēius imperātor fortis nōn est. 4. Illi quoque milītēs in malā causā sunt, nam in eōrum exercitū frūmentum nōn est. 5. Iīdem milītēs saepe cum Germānīs proelium committēbant. 6. Omnium salūtis causā Caesar suōs castris continēbit. 7. Ipse Caesar illum exercitum per angustias dūcēbat. 8. Istum militem ācriter accūsō; officium suum exercituī atque imperātōrī nōn praestat. 9. Illud quoque cōnsilium probō, sed exercitūs causā proelium nōn com-

mittam. 10. Opiniō illius imperātōris optima est: itaque hunc exercitum dūcere eum iubēbō.

190. 1. Contrary to the belief of the Germans, that commander easily led his troops across the Rhine. 2. I quite¹ approve of² that opinion of yours. 3. This army is valiant, but that (*one*) will not fight. 4. For the sake of his own safety, Caesar kept³ himself a long time in camp. 5. I myself will lead this army through the pass. 6. This road is longer than the road through the Alps, but it is easier.

¹ Maximē. ² Do not use gen.; the *of* belongs in meaning to the verb.
³ Contineō.



Testūdō, literally *turtle-back*. Soldiers protected themselves from a plunging fire of arrows or darts by overlapping their shields above their heads.

LESSON XXVI.

PRONOUNS (Continued).

191.

Relative Pronoun.

Quī, who, which. This pronoun relates to a preceding noun, pronoun, or statement, called the antecedent, and introduces a clause giving information about the antecedent. It is thus declined:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Voc.</i>	—— ¹	——	——
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Voc.</i>	—— ¹	——	——
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

¹ In the relative and succeeding classes of pronouns the meaning prevents the existence of a vocative case.

192.

Agreement of the Relative.

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends on its relation to the clause in which it stands, *e. g.*:

ego, quī sum imperātor vester, *I, who am your commander; exercitui, quem cōscripserat, praeerat, he was in command of the army which he had raised; in templō est, cūius portae patent, he is in the temple whose gates stand open.*

193. Interrogative Pronoun.

Quis, who? what? which? This pronoun is used in asking questions. It is used either as a true or an adjective pronoun, some of its forms differing slightly in the adjective use. It is thus declined, the bracketed forms being adjectives only. The feminine occurs only in adjective uses.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

194. QUESTIONS.

A question may be asked *with* or *without* an interrogative word, e. g.:

Who is here? and, is he here?

The first class needs no comment. Questions of the second class are expressed in English by placing the subject after the verb; but in Latin this is impossible, for the subject is very often expressed only by the ending of the verb. The Latin employs *three words* to ask such questions. These words are called **interrogative particles**· they *have no meaning*, and in addition to marking a question (like the mark ? in English) they indicate the answer expected. These words are:

-ne, enclitic, *i. e.*, added to the emphatic word, simply asking for information, *e. g.*:

rogāsne? do you ask?

nōnne, implying the answer, *yes*, *e. g.*:

nōnne rogas? do you not see?

num, implying the answer, *no*, e. g.:

num hōc rogās? *do you ask this?*

implying that you do not ask it. Such questions can be indicated in English only by tone of voice or by a roundabout form of words, as, *You don't ask this, do you?*

195.

VOCABULARY.

collocō, -are, *place, station, bring together.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

coniūrō, -āre, *conspire* (lit., *swear together*).

dēfendō, -ere, *DEFEND.*

dubitō, -āre, *DOUBT; hesitate.*

impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance; pl., baggage* (of an army).

liberō, -āre, *LIBERATE, set free.*

neque or nec, conj., used indifferently before vowels and consonants; *nor, and . . . not* (used in preference to *et* or *atque* and *nōn*).

primus, -a, -um, adj. (165, c), *first.*

semper, adv., *always.*

196. 1. Dē virtūte decimae legiōnis nōn dubitō, quae semper in proeliis prīma est. 2. Dē proeliō quod Germānī in silvīs pugnābant, servōs ad Caesarem cum litterīs celeriter mittam. 3. Quis nōs istā obsidiōne liberābit. 4. Hīc est lēgātus cui Caesar dōna semper dabat. 5. Prōvinciamne quoque eī dabit Caesar? 6. Quam coniūrātiōnem mihi nūntiās? Nonne haec Belgārum et Germānōrum coniūrātiō est, quōrum multa milia in armīs sunt. 7. Num Haeduī contrā Rōmānōs coniūrābunt? Nonne illi sunt quōs Caesar saepe amīcōs vocābat? 8. Caesar arma et impedimenta in ūnum locum collocābit, quem vallō et aggere dēfendet. 9. Quis est Labiēnus? Ille est lēgātus quī agminis impedimenta ad Caesarem carrīs portat. 10. Quī sunt Germānī? Hominēs audācissimi sunt quī mediis in silvīs incolunt.

197. 1. I have no doubts (= I do not doubt) about your valor, for you are soldiers who always fight most bravely. 2. What baggage will the army bring into winter quarters? 3. Does a brave commander abandon his baggage to the enemy? 4. What opinion have you about a battle on the mountains? 5. The Germans will not hesitate to besiege the town; and what wall will defend it against them? 6. Will the Gauls wage war with the Romans, who are braver?

LESSON XXVII.

PRONOUNS (Continued).

198.

Indefinite Pronouns.

These are numerous and are chiefly compounds. Their fundamental meaning is *some one, any one*. They are used as true or adjective pronouns, differing slightly in certain forms according to usage.

The principal indefinites are:

- (1) **Quis**, *some one, any one*; used only after **sī**, *if*; **nisi**, *if . . . not, unless*; **nē**, *lest*; **num**.
- (2) **Aliquis**, *some one, any one*, the most common indefinite.
- (3) **Quīdam**, *a certain one*.
- (4) **Quisque**, *each*, often equivalent to *every*.
- (5) **Quisquam**, *any, any at all*; used only in negative or implied negative sentences. It lacks the feminine and plural.

199.

Declension of the Indefinite Pronouns.

Some of the chief indefinites are declined as follows, the adjective forms being bracketed. There are numerous other compound indefinites of which only the pronominal part is declined, the suffixes being added unchanged.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	qua (quae)	quid (quod)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	qua (quae)
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	qua, quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quodam	quādam	quōdam
PLUR.— <i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.— <i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	————	quicquam
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusquam	————	cūiusquam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	————	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	————	quicquam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	————	quōquam

200.

Relative Indefinite Pronouns.

These are *quisquis*, *quicumque* (-*cunque*), *whoever*, *whatever*. Both parts of *quisquis* are declined, the neuter being usually written *quicquid*. *Quicumque* is declined like *qui*.

201.

Reciprocal Pronouns.

Expressions involving the English reciprocals, *each other*, *one another*, are rendered in Latin by *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*,

inter sē for the first, second, and third persons respectively, *e. g.*:

inter nōs obsidēs damus, we give hostages to each other; *inter sē obsidēs dant*, they give hostages to each other.

202.

VOCABULARY.

existimō, -āre, think, consider.

graviter, adv., seriously, severely.

inde, adv., then, next; thence, from there.

inter, prep. with acc., between, among.

princeps, -ipis, m., chief, leader.

sī, conj., if.

sine, prep. with abl., without.

spērō, -āre, hope, hope for (with direct object).

203. 1. *Sī quis victōriam spērat*, fortissimē pugnat. 2. *Quendam Gallum, virum fortissimum, cum litterīs et nūntiīs ad Haeduōs mittit.* 3. *Belgae et Rōmānī obsidēs inter sē dabunt.* 4. *Caesar inde principēs cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē convocat, atque eōs graviter accūsāt.* 5. *Num mē quoque accūsābit, cūius cīvitās frūmentum eius exercitūi semper dat?* 6. *Existimatne quisquam in hōc exercitū fugam meliōrem quam victōriam?* 7. *Aliquis ē castrīs ad aciem Caesaris contendit. Quis est? Num gladium portat? Nullum gladium portat, sed litterās; nūntius est.* 8. *Sī quis dē victōriā in hōc proeliō dubitat, istum in castra sine armīs mittam.* 9. *Belgāsne gravius quam Germānōs accūsāt Caesar?* 10. *Quisque prō sē contrā hostēs fortiter pugnābat.*

204. 1. If anybody will give grain to the army, the commander will praise him. 2. Each one for himself carries the plunder from the city. 3. He gives the letters to a certain Galba, a slave, who will carry them to Caesar. 4. Some one calls Caesar to the rear. 5. Is anybody in camp considering flight? 6. Who hopes for victory and will not fight? 7. Caesar and Labienus often gave gifts to each other. 8. We will give hostages to each other.

LESSON XXVIII.

THE PERFECT SYSTEM. INDICATIVE MODE OF *AMŌ.*

205. THE PERFECT STEM AND TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION.

The three tenses previously given express continued action. There are also three tenses of completed action, one each for present, past, and future time. These in the active voice are formed on another stem—the perfect.

(a) The perfect stem is found by dropping the ending -ī from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. This form is always given in vocabularies.

206. THE SUPINE STEM.

This stem is little used in the active voice, but of great importance in forming tenses of completed action in the passive.

The supine stem is found by dropping the ending -um from the supine. This form is always given in vocabularies: its use will be explained later.

207. No comprehensive rule can be given for forming the perfect and supine stems from the present stem; but in the first conjugation regularly, and in the second and fourth conjugations usually, these stems may be formed from the present stem by the following table:

	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	SUPINE STEM.
CONJ. I.	amā	amāv	amāt
CONJ. II.	monē	monu	monit
CONJ. IV.	audī	audīv	audīt

In CONJ. III. the perfect and supine stems are too varied in formation to classify.

208.

Principal Parts.

There are thus three parts of the verb which are of essential service in finding the three stems on which all parts of every verb are built. These are the **present infinitive**, **perfect indicative**, **supine**. Also the first singular **present indicative** is the form by which we identify or mention a verb, *e. g.*:

We say, '*the verb amō,*' or that '*monēbam comes from moneō.*'

These four parts, beginning with the present indicative, are called the **principal parts**.

(a) The principal parts are always given in dictionaries and vocabularies.

209.

THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

(a) **The Perfect Tense.**—This tense has two uses:

(1) It may express completed action in present time: it is then called the **perfect definite**, and is translated with the auxiliary *have*, *e. g.*:

vocāvī, *I have called.*

(2) It may express the mere fact of completed action without reference to time: it is then called the **perfect historical**, and is translated by a simple past tense; *e. g.*:

vocāvī, *I called.*

In a simple or compound sentence these uses cannot be distinguished, but in complex sentences the distinction is shown by the syntax.

(b) The **Pluperfect Tense** expresses completed action in past time, and is translated by the auxiliary *had*, *e. g.*:

vocāveram, *I had called.*

(c) The **Future Perfect Tense** expresses completed action in future time, and is translated by the auxiliaries *shall have, will have*, e. g.:

vocāverō, I shall have called.

(d) These three tenses constitute the **Perfect System**. (See 96.)

210. Formation of the Perfect System in the Indicative Active.

(a) The **Perfect Tense** has a distinct set of personal endings; it is the only tense thus irregular. They are annexed directly to the perfect stem. These special endings are:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First person.</i>	-ī	-imus
<i>Second person.</i>	-istī	-istis
<i>Third person.</i>	-it	-ērunt or -ēre

(b) The **Pluperfect** has the tense sign **-erā**.

(c) The **Future Perfect** has the tense sign **-eri**.

211. The Indicative Active of *amō, I love*.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>amō</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amātum</i>

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
<i>amō, I love.</i>	<i>amāmus, we love.</i>	
<i>amās, you love.</i>	<i>amātis, you love.</i>	
<i>amat, he loves.</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

<i>amābam, I was loving, I loved.</i>	<i>amābāmus, we were loving, etc.</i>
<i>amābās, you were loving, etc.</i>	<i>amābātis, you were loving, etc.</i>
<i>amābat, he was loving, etc.</i>	<i>amābant, they were loving, etc.</i>

FUTURE.

<i>amābō, I shall love.</i>	<i>amābimus, we shall love.</i>
<i>amābis, you will love.</i>	<i>amābitis, you will love.</i>
<i>amābit, he will love.</i>	<i>amābunt, they will love.</i>

SINGULAR.	PERFECT.	PLURAL.
amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved.</i>	amāvimus, <i>we have loved, we loved.</i>	
amāvistī, <i>you have loved, you loved.</i>	amāvistis, <i>you have loved, you loved.</i>	
amāvit, <i>he has loved, he loved.</i>	amāvērunt or -ēre, <i>they have loved.</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram, <i>I had loved.</i>	amāverāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>
amāverās, <i>you had loved.</i>	amāverātis, <i>you had loved.</i>
amāverat, <i>he had loved.</i>	amāverant, <i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i>	amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i>
amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

212. *Remark.*—Of the first conjugation verbs already given, **dō** and **praestō** alone exhibit irregularity in the formation of their principal parts. They are here repeated. The principal parts of the others the student can form for himself, patterned exactly after **amō**, **amāre**, **amāvī**, **amātum**. Hereafter the principal parts of all verbs will be indicated in the vocabularies, except that in subsequent lessons regular verbs of the first conjugation will simply be marked thus, I.

VOCABULARY.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>call, name.</i>	dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., <i>right; fem. as noun, the right hand.</i>
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>ARM, equip.</i>	dō, dare, dedī, datum, <i>give.</i>
bona, -ōrum, ¹ pl. n., <i>goods, possessions.</i>	mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ² <i>hasten.</i>
castellum, -ī, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i>	praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, <i>perform; furnish; exhibit, show; excel.</i>
cornū, -ūs, n., <i>horn; wing of an army.</i>	renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>bring back word, report.</i>
	sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., <i>left.</i>

¹ Neuter plural of **bonus** used substantively, 81. ² Refers to beginning an action speedily, while **contendō** refers to the energetic performance of the action.

213. 1. Dextrum cornū suī exercitūs prō castrīs collocāvit, sed sinistrum contrā hostēs incitāvit. 2. Haeduōs saepe amīcōs populī Rōmānī appellāverat. 3. Omnēs decimae

legiōnis cohortēs gladiis et telīs armāre mātūrāvit. 4. Belgae magnam virtūtem praestitērunt; itaque Caesar multa bona eis dedit. 5. Lēgātī Gallōrum victōriam Belgārum suis renuntiāvērunt. 6. Cōpiaē Caesaris magnum hostium castellum in summō monte expugnāverint. 7. Equitēs Gallōrum cum equīs suis facile mātūra frūmenta prōvinciae vastāverant. 8. Caesar hōs equitēs superāvit atque eōs in fugam dedit.

214. 1. The right wing of Caesar's army had overcome the enemy in the midst of the forests. 2. Caesar's brave auxiliaries reported their victory to him. 3. I shall have performed my duty to Caesar. 4. You have always loved war. 5. What did¹ you tell Caesar about the battle? 6. The Haedui brought their goods into the town.

¹ Use the perfect: this rendering is frequently necessary, especially in questions.



Coin of Augustus Caesar, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar and first Emperor of Rome. This coin is of gold, worth about \$5.10.



Coin of Marc Antony.

LESSON XXIX.

CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VOICE OF *AMŌ* COMPLETED.

215. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

The subjunctive mode never asserts a fact nor asks a simple question. It expresses the circumstances attending or limiting facts, such as their *time, cause, purpose, result*, etc.

(a) The subjunctive as an independent verb is very rare in narrative Latin. When it does occur, the present tense may be translated, '*may I love*,' etc. (as a wish; first person singular only); '*let us love*' (an exhortation; first person plural only); '*let him love*,' '*let them love*' (as a mild command; third person only); '*you may love*' (as a possibility). The imperfect and pluperfect tenses may sometimes be rendered, '*I should (would) love*,' etc.; and '*I should (would) have loved*,' etc.

(b) The subjunctive (*sub iungō, join to*) is essentially a subordinate mode joined to principal clauses to explain them, the meaning of the subjunctive depending in every instance on the nature of the clause and the way such clauses are expressed in English. *The subjunctive tenses, therefore, have no characteristic meanings of their own*, and no attempt will be made to assign meanings to them in the paradigms.

Note.—To illustrate: (1) The subjunctive is the most common way of expressing purpose in Latin. Purpose in English is most often indicated by an infinitive, *he fought to win*; therefore, the purpose subjunctive may be rendered by an English infinitive; as well as by *in order that, in order to*, etc. (2) A subjunctive is used in Latin after verbs of prevention and hindrance; but in English we use *from* with the infinitive in -ing; *he could not prevent them from doing this*; hence in such sentences we must render the subjunctive by a '*from*' idiom.

(c) There are four tenses in the subjunctive, **present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect**. The two former are built on the present stem; the two latter, on the perfect stem.

216.

Formation.

(a) The personal endings of the active voice of all tenses of the subjunctive in all verbs are **-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt** (22).

(b) The **tense sign of the present subjunctive** in regular verbs is **-ē** in Conjugation I., **-ā** in the other conjugations.

(c) The **tense sign of the imperfect subjunctive** is **-rē** in all verbs.

(d) The **tense signs of the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive** in the active voice are **-erī** and **-issē** respectively, for all verbs.

217.

THE IMPERATIVE MODE.

This is the mode of command, and is little used in narrative Latin. There are but two tenses, **present** and **future**, the former having the second person only, the latter the second and third persons.

(a) The endings of the imperative are:

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Present.</i>	2. —	2. -te
<i>Future.</i>	2. -tō	2. -tōte
	3. -tō	3. -ntō

These endings are added directly to the present stem, the second singular present being the same as the stem, since a personal ending is wanting.

NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.

218. These are **Participles, Infinitives, Gerunds, Supines**.

(a) **Participles** are verbal adjectives. There are two active participles:

(1) **Present participle**, formed by adding **-ns** (genitive **-ntis**) to the present stem, forming one-termination adjectives, and corresponding in meaning to the English participle in **-ing**, *e. g.*:

amāns, *loving*.

(2) **Future participle**, formed by adding **-ūrus, -a, -um** to the supine stem. It is declined like **bonus**, and signifies approximately *about to, intending to, likely to*, though it has no exact equivalent in English, *e. g.*:

amātūrus, *about to love, intending to love.*

(b) **Infinitives** are verbal nouns. There are three infinitives, one each for present, past, and future time.

(1) **Present infinitive**, formed by adding **-re** to the present stem. It is in the main equivalent in meaning to the English present infinitive, *e. g.*:

amāre, *to love.*

(2) **Perfect infinitive**, formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem, *e. g.*:

amāvisse, *to have loved.*

(3) **Future infinitive**, formed by using the future participle with the auxiliary **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**. The meanings of this form depend so entirely on the syntax that only approximate meanings can be assigned, *e. g.*:

amātūrus esse, *to be going to love, to be about to love, to intend to love.*

(c) **Gerunds** are neuter verbal nouns of the second declension and correspond to the many usages of the English infinitive in **-ing**. They have the forms of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases singular, and are formed by adding to the present stem the endings **-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō**, *e. g.*:

amandī, *of loving*; **amandō**, *for loving*; **amandum**, *loving*; **amandō**, *by loving*.

(d) **Supines** are neuter verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular, and are formed

by adding to the supine stem the endings *-um, -û*. Each has but one use, to be explained later, *e. g.*:

amatum, to love; amatû, to love, to be loved.

219. The Active Voice of *amô* (Completed).

(a) Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
SING.— <i>amem</i>	<i>amārem</i>	<i>amāverim</i>	<i>amāvissem</i>
<i>amēs</i>	<i>amārēs</i>	<i>amāveris</i>	<i>amāvissēs</i>
<i>amet</i>	<i>amāret</i>	<i>amāverit</i>	<i>amāvisset</i>
PLUR.— <i>amēmus</i>	<i>amārēmus</i>	<i>amāverimus</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>
<i>amētis</i>	<i>amārētis</i>	<i>amāveritis</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>
<i>ament</i>	<i>amārent</i>	<i>amāverint</i>	<i>amāvissent</i>

(b) Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING.—2. <i>amā, love.</i>	<i>amātô, you shall love.</i>
3. —	<i>amātô, he shall love.</i>
PLUR.—2. <i>amāte, love.</i>	<i>amātôte, you shall love.</i>
3. —	<i>amantô, they shall love.</i>

(c) Infinitives.

Pres. amāre, to love.
Perf. amāvisse, to have loved.
Fut. amātûrus esse, to be about to love.¹

(d) Participles.

Pres. amāns, loving.
Fut. amātûrus, about to love.¹

(e) Gerunds.

Gen. amandî, of loving.
Dat. amandô, for loving.
Acc. amandum, loving.
Abl. amandô, by loving.

(f) Supines.

Acc. amatum, to love.
Abl. amatû, to love, to be loved.²

¹ Meanings approximate only (218, a, 2 and b, 3). ² 219, d.

220.

VOCABULARY.

ante, prep. with acc., *before* (both of time and space); *in front of*.
iam, adv., *already, now, at length*.
nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
nunc, adv., *now, at this time*.
-que, conj., *and*; enclitic and appended to the second of the two words connected.

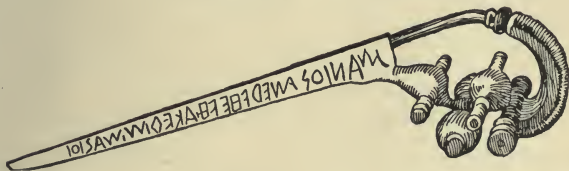
quod, conj., *because*.
quondam, adv., *formerly*.
statim, adv., *immediately, at once*.
tamen, conj., *nevertheless, yet*.
ubi, rel. and interrog. adv., *where; when*.

221. *Remark.*—In translating the subjunctives in this exercise, the pupil must select from 215, *a*, those meanings which in his judgment best fit each sentence.

1. Exercitum ante castra nōndum collocāvimus, sed tamen hostēs mūnitiōnēs nostrās statim oppugnent. 2. Fortiter iam eōs exspectēmus, quod eōrum exercitum facile superābimus. 3. Cohortēs gladiīs tēlisque armēmus: quondam tēla sōla habēbant. 4. Germānī quondam silvās incolēbant. Ubi nunc incolunt? Galliam incolunt cum omnibus cōpiīs. Eōs in fugam trāns Rhēnum dēmus. 5. Obsidēs dōnaque inter nōs dēmus. 6. Belgae urbem oppugnant, sed eam nōndum expugnāvērunt; cīvēs obsidiōne statim liberēmus.

222. 1. Let us attack the camp at once. 2. The rest of the army is now boldly besieging¹ the town: let us overcome them. 3. Let us urge on the soldiers against the enemy. 4. Formerly we thought about peace, but let us now hope for war. 5. May our commander check the attack of the enemy. 6. Let us now carry grain into our winter quarters.

¹ *Is besieging*, what tense?



Fibula, brooch or clasp, with inscription. This is the earliest known specimen of Latin. It is written from right to left and reads thus: **Manios med vhevhaked Numasioi**, or in ordinary Latin, **Manius mē fēcit Numāsio**, *Manius made me for Numasius*.

LESSON XXX.

THE VERB *SUM*.

223.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	FUT. PTC
sum	esse	fuī	futūrus

(a) Indicative.

PRESENT.

SING.—sum, *I am.*
 es, *you are.*
 est, *he is.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*
 erās, *you were.*
 erat, *he was.*

PLUR.—sumus, *we are.*
 estis, *you are.*
 sunt, *they are.*

erāmus, *we were.*
 erātis, *you were.*
 erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

SING.—erō, *I shall be.*
 eris, *you will be.*
 erit, *he will be.*

PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, I was.*
 fuistī, *you have been, you were.*
 fuit, *he has been, he was*

PLUR.—erimus, *we shall be.*
 eritis, *you will be.*
 erunt, *they will be.*

fuimus, *we have been, we were.*
 fuistis, *you have been, you were.*
 fuērunt, } *they have been, they were.*
 fuēre, }

PLUPERFECT.

SING.—fueram, *I had been.*
 fuerās, *you had been.*
 fuerat, *he had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*
 fueris, *you will have been.*
 fuerit, *he will have been.*

PLUR.—fuerāmus, *we had been.*
 fuerātis, *you had been.*
 fuerant, *they had been.*

fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
 fueritis, *you will have been.*
 fuerint, *they will have been.*

(b) Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

SING.—sim
 sis
 sit

IMPERFECT.

essem
 essēs
 esset

PERFECT.

fuerim
 fuerīs
 fuerit

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem
 fuissēs
 fuisset

PLUR.—sīmus

sītis
 sint

essēmus

essētis
 essent

fuerīmus

fuerītis
 fuerint

fuissēmus

fuissētis
 fuissent

(c) Imperative.

PRESENT.

SING.—2.	es, <i>be.</i>
3.	—
PLUR.—2.	este, <i>be.</i>
3.	—

FUTURE.

estō,	<i>you shall be.</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be.</i>
estōte,	<i>you shall be.</i>
suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

(d) Infinitives.

Pres.	esse, <i>to be.</i>
Perf.	fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>
Fut.	futūrus esse or fore, ² <i>to be going to be, to intend to be.</i>

(e) Participle.

Fut. futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>about to be, likely to be.</i>
------------------------	-----------------------------------

¹ Sum has no supine. The future participle is, therefore, given among the principal parts as the only form exhibiting the supine stem, fut. ² Often used instead of futūrus esse.

224.

VOCABULARY.

celer, -is, -e, adj., <i>swift.</i>	ibi, adv., <i>there.</i>
dēsum, dēsse, dēfui, -futūrus, <i>be wanting, be lacking, fail.</i>	nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque, <i>neither . . . nor.</i>
hiemō, I., <i>pass the winter.</i>	numquam, adv., <i>never.</i>

225. 1. Equi Gallōrum parvī fuērunt, sed celerrimī. 2. Frīgora per tōtam Galliam maxima fuerant; itaque Caesar proelia nōn pugnāverat. 3. Duo castella in dextrō cornū hostium sunt, quae militēs fortiter oppugnābunt. 4. Nunc fortis in proeliō sim; nam multīs in periculīs erō. 5. In Galliā hiemēmus, quod numquam ibi fui. 6. Neque equitēs neque auxilia in exercitū nostrō sunt; tamen ācerrimē cum Germānīs pugnēmus. 7. Nec gladium nec tēlum habeo; sed tamen miles sim. 8. Equitēs hostibus nōn dēsunt; sed nullus eques in exercitū meō est.

226. 1. There were two forts on top of the mountain. 2. Where is their (eōrum) camp? 3. May I be always good. 4. May I be he (is) who shall announce the victory to Caesar. 5. Victory has never failed the Romans.¹ 6. May our commander defeat the Gauls, for we are in great danger.

¹ Dative.

LESSON XXXI.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

227. The passive voice, as in English, represents the subject as acted upon.

FORMATION OF THE PASSIVE.

(1) The passive voice is distinguished from the active in the present system (96) by change of personal endings only. The personal endings of the passive present system are:

SING.—or, -r ¹	PLUR.—mur
-ris or -re	-mini
-tur	-ntur

¹ If the active tense ends in -ō, the passive ending is -or; if the active tense ends in -m, the passive replaces -m with -r.

(2) The perfect stem does not enter into the formation of the passive voice. The tenses of the perfect system (209, *d*) in the passive are compound, combining the perfect participle with tenses of *sum*.

(3) The personal endings of the imperative passive are:

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. -re	-mini
<i>Fut.</i> 2. -tor	wanting
3. -tor	-ntor

228. Non-finite Forms of the Passive.—These are participles and infinitives only. There are two passive participles, the perfect and gerundive. There are three infinitives, as in the active.

(a) The perfect participle is formed by adding to the

supine stem the endings **-us, -a, -um**. It is declined like **bonus** and corresponds in meaning to the English *past participle* in its passive uses, *e. g.*:

amātus, *loved*.

(b) The **gerundive participle** is formed by adding to the present stem the endings **-ndus, -nda, -ndum**. It is declined like **bonus**. In meaning it contains an idea of *necessity* or *obligation*, *e. g.*:

amandus, *to be loved, must be loved, deserving to be loved*.

(c) The **present infinitive passive** is formed in Conjugations I., II., IV. by adding the ending **-rī** to the present stem; and in Conjugation III. by adding to the present stem the ending **-ī**, which absorbs the stem vowel, *e. g.*:

Conj. I., **amārī**; Conj. III., **regī**.

(d) The **perfect infinitive passive** is formed by combining the perfect participle with **esse**; *e. g.*:

amātus esse, *to have been loved*.

(e) The **future infinitive passive** is formed by combining the supine in **-um** with **irī**, an impersonal present infinitive passive of a verb meaning *go*, *e. g.*:

amātum irī, *to be going to be loved*.

229. Passive Voice, First Conjugation.

Indicative.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.		PLURAL.
amor, <i>I am loved</i> .		amāmur, <i>we are loved</i> .	
amāris, } <i>you are loved</i> .		amāminī, <i>you are loved</i> .	
amāre, }			
amātur, <i>he is loved</i> .		amantur, <i>they are loved</i> .	
IMPERFECT.			
amābar, <i>I was loved</i> .		amābāmur, <i>we were loved</i> .	
amābāris or -re, <i>you were loved</i> .		amābāminī, <i>you were loved</i> .	
amābātur, <i>he was loved</i> .		amābantur, <i>they were loved</i> .	

SINGULAR.	FUTURE.	PLURAL.
<i>amābor, I shall be loved.</i>	<i>amābimur, we shall be loved.</i>	
<i>amāberis¹ or -re, you will be loved.</i>	<i>amābimini, you shall be loved.</i>	
<i>amābitur, he shall be loved.</i>	<i>amābuntur, they shall be loved.</i>	

PERFECT.	
<i>amātus² sum, I have been loved, I was loved.</i>	<i>amātī sumus, we have been loved, we were loved.</i>
<i>amātus es, you have been loved, etc.</i>	<i>amātī estis, you have been loved, etc.</i>
<i>amātus est, he has been loved, etc.</i>	<i>amātī sunt, they had been loved, etc.</i>

PLUPERFECT.	
<i>amātus eram, I had been loved.</i>	<i>amātī erāmus, we had been loved.</i>
<i>amātus erās, you had been loved.</i>	<i>amātī erātis, you had been loved.</i>
<i>amātus erat, he had been loved.</i>	<i>amātī erant, they had been loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>amātus erō, I shall have been loved.</i>	<i>amātī erimus, we shall have been loved.</i>
<i>amātus eris, you will have been loved.</i>	<i>amātī eritis, you will have been loved.</i>
<i>amātus erit, he will have been loved.</i>	<i>amātī erunt, they will have been loved.</i>

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>amer</i>	<i>amēmur</i>	<i>amārer</i>	<i>amārēmur</i>
<i>amēris or -re</i>	<i>amēmini</i>	<i>amārēris or -re</i>	<i>amārēmini</i>
<i>amētur</i>	<i>amentur</i>	<i>amārētur</i>	<i>amārentur</i>

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>amātus sim</i>	<i>amātī simus</i>	<i>amātus essem</i>	<i>amātī essēmus</i>
<i>amātus sis</i>	<i>amātī sitis</i>	<i>amātus essēs</i>	<i>amātī essētis</i>
<i>amātus sit</i>	<i>amātī sint</i>	<i>amātus esset</i>	<i>amātī essent</i>

Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING. 2. <i>amāre</i>	<i>amātor</i>
3. —	<i>amātor</i>
PLUR. 2. <i>amāmini</i>	—
3. —	<i>amantor</i>

Infinitives.

Pres. amārī

Perf. amātus esse

Fut. amātum irī

Participles.

Perf. amātus

Gerund. amandus

¹ The tense sign **-bi** regularly becomes **-be** in the second singular of the future passive.

² As the participial member of a compound tense is an adjective, it must agree with its subject in gender, number, and case, *e. g.*:

puer amātus est, the boy has been loved; but puella amāta est, the girl has been loved.

230. Forms Built on the Several Stems.

(a) On the present stem are built the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, in the finite modes (13; 14, b); the present infinitive, the present participle, the gerunds, and the gerundive participle.

(b) On the perfect stem are built the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the finite modes, active only, and the perfect infinitive active. The perfect stem does not appear in the passive voice.

(c) On the supine stem are built the supines, the future participle, the future infinitives, active and passive, the perfect participle, the perfect infinitive passive, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the finite modes passive.

231.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, prep. with *abl.*, *by* (agency after a passive verb); *on, at, on the side of*.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, cleared*.

excitō, I., EXCITE; construct.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring; as a noun, neighbor*.

frustrā, adv., *in vain*.

latus, -eris, n., *side, flank*.

parātus, -a, -um, adj., *ready, prepared*.

pedes, peditis, m., *infantry soldier; pl., infantry*.

tandem, adv., *at length, at last*.

vulnerō, I., *wound*.

Idiom.

apertum latus, the exposed flank (i. e., the right flank, as the left was protected by the shields).

232. 1. Adventus Rōmānōrum ā Germānīs diū exspectābātur. 2. Exercitus eōrum in apertīs locīs ad flūmen collocātus est, ubi quāsdam mūnitiōnēs celeriter excitāverant. 3. Equitēs peditēsque castra in summō monte habent, atque omnia ad bellum parāta sunt. 4. Urbs ācriter oppugnābātur, atque adventus auxiliī diū ā cīvibus frustrā exspectābātur. 5. Multī militēs graviter vulnerātī sunt; tamen exercitus fortiter pugnat. 6. Militēs impetum hostium ab apertō latere diū sustinēbant, sed tandem superātī sunt et in fugam dati.¹ 7. Pāx et amicitia cum finitimīs cīvitatibus confirmātae sunt. 8. Tandem impetus hostium ā militibus Rōmānīs tardātur.

¹ Supply **sunt**: the auxiliary is usually not repeated in a series of verbs in the same tense.

233. 1. The coming of our friends is awaited in vain. 2. Caesar was prepared for¹ an attack upon² the enemy on the exposed flank. 3. The right-of-way through the province was given by Caesar to the Haedui. 4. The town of Ocelum³ will be occupied by the Belgians. 5. The soldier has been severely wounded. 6. The infantry and cavalry of the Gauls have been defeated by the auxiliaries of the Romans.

¹ **ad.** ² **in** with accusative. ³ *Town* and *Ocelum* are appositives.



Roman legionary soldier wearing the *lōrica*, coat of mail.

LESSON XXXII.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJUNCTIVE AS A DEPENDENT MODE.

234. Most Common Uses of the Subjunctive.

(A) To express purpose.

1. **Affirmative purpose clauses** (*i. e.*, purpose *to do* or *to be*) have their verbs in the subjunctive and are introduced by the conjunction **ut**.

2. **Negative purpose clauses** (*i. e.*, purpose *not to do* or *not to be*) have their verbs in the subjunctive and are introduced by the conjunction **nē**.

Explanation.—It is difficult to assign meanings to **ut** and **nē**: they merely show that the clause to which they belong expresses purpose, and may be translated in any of the numerous ways in which purpose is expressed in English, *e. g.*:

Nūntium ad Caesarem mittit ut victōriam nūntiet, *he sends a messenger to Caesar to announce the victory*: we may also translate the purpose clause *in order to announce, that he may announce, in order that he may announce*, etc. **Gallī sē fugae mandābant, nē superārentur**, *the Gauls were taking flight that they might not be defeated, or not to be defeated, or so as not to be defeated*, etc.

Notice that the English infinitive is our most common way of expressing purpose, but the Latin infinitive must never be used in a purpose clause.

235. Tenses in Dependent Clauses.

I. All tenses referring to present or future time are called **primary tenses**; those referring to past time, **secondary tenses**.

(a) The primary tenses of the indicative are the present, future, perfect definite, and future perfect.

(b) The primary tenses of the subjunctive are the present and perfect.

(c) The secondary tenses of the indicative are the imperfect, perfect historical, and pluperfect.

(d) The secondary tenses of the subjunctive are the imperfect and pluperfect.

(e) A present tense is sometimes used for a past tense to secure vividness of style. This happens also in English, chiefly in newspaper headlines, *e. g.*:

Congress adjourns for *Congress has adjourned*, etc.

This use of the present tense is called the **historical present** and may be either primary or secondary.

II. The subjunctive tense to be used in a dependent clause is determined by the

LAW OF SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Primary tenses in principal clauses are followed by primary tenses in dependent clauses; secondary tenses in principal clauses are followed by secondary tenses in dependent clauses, *e. g.*:

pugnō ut superem, *I fight to win*; *pugnābam ut superārem*, *I was fighting to win*; *pugnābō ut superem*, *I shall fight to win*; *pugnāvī ut superem*, *I have fought (perf. def.) to win*; *pugnāvī ut superārem*, *I fought (perf. hist.) to win*; *pugnāveram ut superārem*, *I had fought to win*; *pugnāverō ut superem*, *I shall have fought to win*.

236.

VOCABULARY.

aliter, adv., *otherwise*.

autem, conj., *however*, *but yet*.

cōspectus, -ūs, m., *sight*; *presence*.

diligentia, -ae, f., *DILIGENCE*, *care*.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry* (collective noun, pl. rare).

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout*; *spy*.

interim, adv., *meanwhile*.

militāris, -e, adj., *MILITARY*.

postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day*.

recūsō, I., *refuse*.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

signum, -ī, n., *SIGN*; *standard*.

Idiom.

aliter . . . ac (or *atque*, 162), *otherwise than*, *different from what*.

237. 1. Ordinem agminis aliter habēbat ac Belgīs ab explorātōribus nūntiātūm erat, ut conspectum hostium vītāret. 2. Omnia signa militāria in summō monte collocābuntur, ut in conspectū militum sint. 3. Interim animōs auxiliōrum verbīs cōfirmāvit, nē timōre perturbārentur. 4. Rōmānī et Helvētīi obsidēs inter sē dedērunt: Rōmānī, ut ex agrīs Helvētiōrum mātūrārent; Helvētīi, nē agmen Rōmānōrum vexārent. 5. Equitātus Rōmānōrum tēlis et gladiis et parvīs scūtīs armātus est, ut in equīs pugnāret; peditēs autem gladiōs et scūta māiōra portāvērunt. 6. Postridiē Caesar trāns Rhēnum mātūrāvit, ut frūmenta in agrīs vastāret. 7. Germānī amicitiam populī Rōmānī semper recūsābant, nē servī Rōmānōrum essent. 8. Oppidum summā diligentīā ā Caesare oppugnātum est, ut hiberna in eō occupāret.

238. 1. Caesar hastened across the Rhine to besiege a town of the Germans. 2. He stationed the army near¹ the river to check the enemy's attack. 3. The legion was summoned from the town by the consul, that the citizens might not be annoyed. 4. The Romans and Belgians gave hostages to each other not² to fight. 5. Gifts were given by Caesar to Ariovistus that he might be a friend of the Romans. 6. That king, however, refused all gifts in order to be free.

¹ ad. ² Expresses the purpose of the exchange.



Early as with double headed Janus and prow of ship. In ancient Rome, as with us, questions were often decided by tossing a coin, and the Roman called, "*Capita aut nāviam*," *heads or ship*, instead of "heads or tails." The as was the unit of Roman coinage and its value was a little less than a cent.

LESSON XXXIII.

SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

239. The Active Voice of *moneō*, *I advise*.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>monuī</i>	<i>monitum</i>

Indicative.

PRESENT. *I advise, I am advising, I do advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēmus</i>
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>

IMPERFECT. *I was advising, I advised.*

<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>

FUTURE. *I shall advise.*

<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>

PERFECT. *I have advised, I advised.*

<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>
<i>monuisti</i>	<i>monuistis</i>
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuērunt or -ēre</i>

PLUPERFECT. *I had advised.*

<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have advised.*

monuerō

monuerimus

monueris

monueritis

monuerit

monuerint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

IMPERFECT.

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

SING.—moneam

monērem

monuerim

monuissem

moneās

monērēs

monueris

monuissēs

moneat

monēret

monuerit

monuisset

PLUR.—moneāmus

monērēmus

monuerīmus

monuissēmus

moneātis

monērētis

monuerītis

monuissēs

moneant

monērent

monuerint

monuissent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

SING.—2. monē

monētō

3. —

monētō

PLUR.—2. monēte

monētōte

3. —

monentō

Infinitives.

Participles.

Pres.

monēre

Pres. monēns

Perf.

monuisse

Fut. monitūrus

Fut.

monitūrus esse

Gerunds.

Supines.

Gen.

monendī

Acc. monitum

Dat.

monendō

Abl. monitū

Acc.

monendum

Abl.

monendō

240. Most Common Uses of the Subjunctive (Continued from 234).

(B) To express result.

(1) **Affirmative result clauses** have their verbs in the subjunctive and are introduced by the conjunction *ut*.

(2) **Negative result clauses** have their verbs in the subjunctive and are introduced by *ut nōn*.

(3) The principal clause must contain some demonstrative word, such as *sīc*, *ita*, *tam*, *so*; *tantus*, *-a*, *-um*, *so great*;

tālis, -e, *such, of such kind*; *tantopere*, *so greatly, etc.* *Sic* is used of manner only; *ita*, of manner usually and of degree rarely; *tam*, of degree only. Consequently, *sic* modifies verbs; *tam*, adjectives and adverbs; *ita*, all three.

Explanation.—The conjunction *ut* and its negative *ut nōn* may here be translated *that, so that*; *that . . . not, so that . . . not*. When in doubt whether a clause expresses purpose or result, look for the demonstrative word in the principal clause; but no doubt can occur when the clause is negative, *e. g.*:

Miles tam graviter vulnerātus est, ut aeger sit, the soldier is so severely wounded that he is faint.

Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs sumpserat, ut ferendus nōn esset, Ariovistus had put on such airs that he was not endurable.

Note.—Do not mistake a mere statement of cause and effect for a result clause, which must have the form *so that, etc.* We may say, *the soldier is severely wounded and is faint*, where his faintness is as much the result of his wound, as in the example above; but it is not a result clause, for the *so that* is lacking.

241. The second conjugation verbs previously given are here repeated, with their principal parts. The numbers following them indicate the lesson in which the verb first occurs.

VOCABULARY.

<i>contineō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -tentum (10).	<i>moneō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itum (10).
<i>habeō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itum (10).	<i>prohibeō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itum (11).
<i>iubeō</i> , -ēre, -iussī, iussum (10).	<i>sustineō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -tentum (16).
<i>videō</i> , -ēre, vīdī, vīsum (12).	

242. 1. Caesar *tālis* est vir, ut maximē laudētur. 2. *Tālēs* agrōs vīdimus,¹ ut eōs tōtius Galliae optimōs existimēmus. 3. *Sic* vōs dē hostibus monuimus,¹ ut eōs agrīs vicisque vestrīs prohibuerītis. 4. *Miles* tēlō tam graviter vulnerātus est, ut sē ē proeliō portārī iubēret. 5. Alpēs agrum Helvētiōrum ita continent, ut proelia cum finitimīs facile nōn pugnent. 6. Germānī multōs vicōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliā habuērunt, ita ut Rōmānī eōs prōvinciā prohibēr-

ent. 7. *Vōs iam iubēmus exercitum vestrum ad flūmen statim collocāre, nē hostēs agrōs sociōrum vastent.* 8. *Lēgātus tantam virtūtem in proeliō praestitit, ut Caesar eum magnopere laudāret.*

¹ Perfect definite: what shows it?

243. 1. The army of the enemy is so great that we fight with it in vain. 2. We possess very many villages in open places near the river. 3. The attack of the Gauls was so vigorous that it disturbed the minds of our soldiers very greatly. 4. We warned you to¹ shun the spears and swords with the greatest care. 5. The right flank of the battle-line kept the enemy out of the camp. 6. We love our commander, because he is such a man that all praise him.

¹ Use *ut* and a purpose clause.



Roman shop, from painting at Pompeii. The shops had no front, but were open to the street.

LESSON XXXIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

244. The Passive Voice of *monēō*.

Indicative.

PRESENT. *I am advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT. *I was advised.*

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE. *I shall be advised.*

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT. *I have been advised, I was advised.*

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

PLUPERFECT. *I had been advised.*

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been advised.*

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monear	moneāmur	monērer	monērēmur
moneāris or -re	moneāmini	monērēris or -re	monērēmini
moneātur	moneantur	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
monitus sim	monitī simus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus sis	monitī sītis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus sit	monitī sint	monitus esset	monitī essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING.—2. monēre	monētor
3. —	monētor
PLUR.—2. monēmini	—
3. —	monentor

Infinitives.

<i>Pres.</i> monērī
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse
<i>Fut.</i> monitum irī

Participles.

<i>Perf.</i> monitus
<i>Gerund.</i> monendus

245. Most Common Uses of the Subjunctive.

(C) After various subordinate conjunctions, especially **cum**. **Cum** with the subjunctive may express—

(1) **Time**: **Cum** temporal, with imperfect and pluperfect tenses only; *when*.

(2) **Cause**: **Cum** causal, with any tense; *because, since*.

(3) **Concession**:¹ **cum** concessive, with any tense; *although*.

(a) In any given instance select that meaning of **cum** which best fits the circumstances.

¹ A concessive clause is a clause introduced by the word *although*.

246.

VOCABULARY.

beneficium, -ī (-iī), n., BENEFIT, favor.	perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, terrify, frighten.
cum, conj., caus., temp., concess., when; because, since; although.	pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, PER- TAIN, tend to; reach, extend.
firmus, -a, -um, adj., FIRM, strong.	teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.
gēns, gentis, f., tribe.	timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear; be afraid.
memoria, -ae, f., MEMORY.	undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides.
nātūra, -ae, f., NATURE, character.	

247. 1. Impetus hostium diū sustinēbātur. Milītēs tandem ita perterriti sunt, ut sē fugae mandārent. 2. Cum diū et ācritē pugnāvissent,¹ pons, quī ad Ocelum pertinet, ā Caesaris cōpiis occupātus est. 3. Gēns Helvētiōrum quondam tam magna fuit, ut nātūrā loci undique continēretur. 4. Multa beneficia Rōmānōrum memoriā tenēbat, tamen tēla omnia et scūta et signa militāria hostibus dedit. 5. Cum hostēs magnopere timeātis, tamen fortiter pugnātis. 6. Cum mihi frūmenta nōn dederitis, vōs omnēs in numerō hostium habēbō. 7. Cum gēns Helvētiōrum firmissima esset, agrōs finitimōrum semper vexābat. 8. Cum Helvētiū firmi ac fortēs essent, nē prīmus quidem impetus Rōmānōrum ab iīs sustentus est.

¹ Pluperfect subjunctive governed by *cum*; translate simply, *had fought*.

248. 1. Since I hold in memory your many favors to me, I will give you a province. 2. Though a bridge once¹ extended to the town across the river, now there are only boats.² 3. When Caesar assaulted the town, he slew three thousand soldiers. 4. On the next day Caesar hastened from the city, though he had a small army. 5. Though the soldiers were greatly frightened, they fought bravely. 6. The next day the Belgians were hemmed in³ on all sides by Caesar's troops.

¹ quondam.² Use *nāvis*.³ *contineō*.

LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

249. The Active Voice of *regō*, *I rule*.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>regō</i>	<i>regere</i>	<i>rēxī</i>	<i>rēctum</i>

Indicative.

PRESENT, <i>I rule</i> .		IMPERFECT, <i>I was ruling, I ruled</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>regō</i>	<i>regimus</i>	<i>regēbam</i>	<i>regēbāmus</i>
<i>regis</i>	<i>regitis</i>	<i>regēbās</i>	<i>regēbātis</i>
<i>regit</i>	<i>regunt</i>	<i>regēbat</i>	<i>regēbant</i>

FUTURE, <i>I shall rule</i> .		PERFECT, <i>I have ruled, I ruled</i> .	
<i>regam</i>	<i>regēmus</i>	<i>rēxī</i>	<i>rēximus</i>
<i>regēs</i>	<i>regētis</i>	<i>rēxistī</i>	<i>rēxistis</i>
<i>reget</i>	<i>regent</i>	<i>rēxit</i>	<i>rēxērunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i>

PLUPERFECT, <i>I had ruled</i> .		FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have ruled</i> .	
<i>rēxeram</i>	<i>rēxerāmus</i>	<i>rēxerō</i>	<i>rēxerimus</i>
<i>rēxerās</i>	<i>rēxerātis</i>	<i>rēxeris</i>	<i>rēxeritis</i>
<i>rēxerat</i>	<i>rēxerant</i>	<i>rēxerit</i>	<i>rēxerint</i>

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>regam</i>	<i>regāmus</i>	<i>regerem</i>	<i>regerēmus</i>
<i>regās</i>	<i>regātis</i>	<i>regerēs</i>	<i>regerētis</i>
<i>regat</i>	<i>regant</i>	<i>regeret</i>	<i>regerent</i>

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>rēxerim</i>	<i>rēxerimus</i>	<i>rēxissem</i>	<i>rēxissēmus</i>
<i>rēxeris</i>	<i>rēxeritis</i>	<i>rēxissēs</i>	<i>rēxissētis</i>
<i>rēxerit</i>	<i>rēxerint</i>	<i>rēxisset</i>	<i>rēxissent</i>

Imperative.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.
SING.—2.	rege ¹	regitō
3.	—	regitō
PLUR.—2.	regite	regitōte
3.	—	reguntō

Infinitives.

<i>Pres.</i>	regere
<i>Perf.</i>	rēxisse
<i>Fut.</i>	rēctūrus esse

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	regēns
<i>Fut.</i>	rēctūrus

Gerunds.

<i>Gen.</i>	regendī
<i>Dat.</i>	regendō
<i>Acc.</i>	regendum
<i>Abl.</i>	regendō

Supines.

<i>Acc.</i>	rēctum
<i>Abl.</i>	rēctū

¹ Four important verbs drop the stem vowel in the second singular of the present inv.: they are *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*; forming *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

250. The third conjugation verbs previously given are here repeated, with their principal parts.

VOCABULARY.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (25).	dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum (19).
cōstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum (19).	gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (19).
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum (19).	incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum (19).
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensum (26).	instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum (20).
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum (19).	mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum (19).
	ponō, -ere, posuī, positum (19).
	redūcō, -ere, dūxī, -ductum (19).
	relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum (19).

251. 1. Equitēs Belgārum ex oppidō summā celeritāte contendērunt atque proelium cum auxiliīs Caesaris commīsērunt. 2. Caesar in Germāniam magnīs itineribus contendere cōstituerat, sed hōs equitēs ē fugā redūxit atque eōs in numerō hostium habuit. 3. Hostēs urbem maximā

virtūte dēfendērunt. Itaque Caesar aciem suam instrūxit et Labiēnum lēgātum ad imperātōrem Belgārum cum nūntiis mīsit. 4. Labiēnus incolās urbis omnia sua¹ relinquere iussit et ex urbe contendere. 5. Imperātor omnēs cīvēs in castra Rōmānōrum ad Caesarem dūxit. 6. Rōmānī eōs castris continuērunt, quod cum Caesare bellum gesserant. 7. Imperātor officium cīvitātī suae praestiterat, nam bellum fortiter gesserat. 8. Rōmānī inde castra trāns flūmen posuērunt quod urbem ab agrīs Gallōrum dīvisit.

¹ Supply *property* in translating: see 81.

252. 1. Caesar brought back the ambassadors of the Gauls and held them in the number of his enemies. 2. Labienus sent many pack animals into the camp and gave them to Caesar. 3. The commander performed his duty to his state and kept the enemy from the winter quarters. 4. The Roman general led his army across the Rhine and waged war with Ariovistus, King of the Germans. 5. The Germans abandoned their goods¹ and took flight into the forest. 6. The Rhine divided Germany from Gaul.

¹ Use the accusative plural neuter of **bonus** substantively.



Sign from a baker's shop, Pompeii.

LESSON XXXVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

253. The Passive Voice of *regō*.

Indicative.

PRESENT, <i>I am ruled.</i>		IMPERFECT, <i>I was ruled.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
regor	regimur	regēbar	regēbāmur
regeris ¹ or -re	regimini	regēbāris or -re	regēbāmini
regitur	reguntur	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE, <i>I shall be ruled.</i>		PERFECT, <i>I have been ruled, I was ruled.</i>	
regar	regēmur	rēctus sum	rēcti sumus
regēris or -re	regēmini	rēctus es	rēcti estis
regētur	reguntur	rēctus est	rēcti sunt
PLUPERFECT, <i>I have been ruled.</i>		FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been ruled.</i>	
rēctus eram	rēcti erāmus	rēctus erō	rēcti erimus
rēctus erās	rēcti erātis	rēctus eris	rēcti eritis
rēctus erat	rēcti erant	rēctus erit	rēcti erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
regar	regāmur	regerer	regerēmur
regāris or -re	regāmini	regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regātur	regantur	regerētur	regerentur
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
rēctus sim	rēcti simus	rēctus essem	rēcti essēmus
rēctus sis	rēcti sītis	rēctus essēs	rēcti essētis
rēctus sit	rēcti sint	rēctus esset	rēcti essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

SING.—2. *regere*

3. —

PLUR.—2. *regimini*

3. —

FUTURE.

*regitor**regitor*

—

reguntor

Infinitives.

*Pres. regī**Perf. rēctus esse**Fut. rēctum iri*

Participles.

*Perf. rēctus**Gerund. regendus*

¹ The final *e* of the stem does not change to *i* in the second singular present indicative passive.

254.

VOCABULARY.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to; induce, influence.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead; move up; do; negotiate.

Allobrogēs, -um, pl., m., the Allobroges (a Gallic tribe).

finis, -is, m., end; boundary; pl., territories.

grātia, -ae, f., favor, popularity; gratitude; pl., thanks.

iugum, -ī, n., yoke; ridge (of mountains).

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive out, banish; rout, defeat.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a river).

Sēquanī, -ōrum, pl., m., the Sēquani (a Gallic tribe).

sub, prep. with acc. and abl.: with acc. after verbs of motion, under; with abl. after verbs of position, under, at, the foot of.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat.

vīnea, -ae, f., shed (to protect troops engaged in siege operations).

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., alive, living.

Idioms.

grātiās agere, to express thanks.

sub iugum mittere, to send under the yoke.¹

¹ The "yoke" consisted of two upright spears joined at the top by a third; under this a defeated army was often compelled to march in token of submission.

255. 1. *Hīs rēbus adductī, vīneās ēgērunt atque oppidum summā virtūte oppugnāvērunt.* 2. *Duae cohortēs in summō iugō relictæ erant, ut Allobrogēs eas vidērent.* 3. *Acies in*

rīpā flūminis lātissimī atque altissimī instrūcta est, nē hostēs nāvibus trāns flūmen portārentur. 4. Quīdam milītēs, ā Sēquanīs superātī et in silvās āctī, vivī atque incolumēs ad Caesarem reductī sunt. 5. Quī¹ cum Caesarem vidērent, grātiās ei multīs verbīs ēgērunt. 6. Caesar inde bellum cum Sēquanīs gessit. Illī quidem fortiter pugnāvērunt, sed Caesar eōs vīcit atque sub iugum mīsīt. 7. Sēquanī, ā Caesare victī, ē fīnibus suīs pulsī sunt. 8. Imperātor Allobrogēs ē castrīs pepulit. Quī cum ē fugā reductī essent, omnēs sub iugum missī sunt.

¹ The relative, referring to something previously mentioned, may begin a sentence in Latin, and is then often to be translated as if demonstrative: translate it here, *they*.

256. 1. Influenced by his many gifts, the envoys expressed (their) thanks to Caesar. 2. The enemy were on the wall of the camp with javelins and swords awaiting the attack of our men. 3. When our men saw the enemy, they hastened to join battle. 4. The enemy were so terrified, that our men easily drove them into the forests. 5. The pack animals were driven to the bank of the river. 6. The camp of the Romans was besieged by many Gauls.



Blind beggar led by little dog.

LESSON XXXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

257. Conjugation of audiō, *I hear*.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
audiō	audire	audivi	auditum

(a) ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative.

PRESENT, *I hear*.

IMPERFECT, *I was hearing, I heard.*

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
audiō	audimus	audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audis	auditis	audiēbās	audiēbātis
audit	audiunt	audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE, *I shall hear*.

PERFECT, *I have heard, I heard.*

audiam	audiēmus	audivi	audivimus
audiēs	audiētis	audivisti	audivistis
audiet	audient	audivit	audivērunt or -ēre

PLUPERFECT, *I had heard*.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have heard.*

audiveram	audiverāmus	audiverō	audiverimus
audiverās	audiveratis	audiveris	audiveritis
audiverat	audiverant	audiverit	audiverint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

IMPERFECT.

audiam	audiāmus	audirem	audirēmus
audiās	audiātis	audirēs	audirētis
audiat	audiant	audiret	audirent

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

audiverim	audiverimus	audivissem	audivissēmus
audiveris	audiveritis	audivissēs	audivissētis
audiverit	audiverint	audivisset	audivissent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

SING.—2. audi

3. —

PLUR.—2. audite

3. —

FUTURE.

auditō

auditō

auditōte

audiuntō

Infinitives.

Pres. audire

Perf. audivisse

Fut. auditūrus esse

Participles.

Pres. audiēns

Fut. auditūrus

Gerunds.

Gen. audiendī

Dat. audiendō

Acc. audiendum

Abl. audiendō

Supines.

Acc. auditum

Abl. auditū

(b) PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative.

PRESENT, *I am heard.*

SING.

audior

audiris or -re

auditor

PLUR.

audimur

audimini

audiuntur

IMPERFECT, *I was heard.*

SING.

audiēbar

audiēbāris or -re

audiēbātur

PLUR.

audiēbāmur

audiēbāmini

audiēbantur

FUTURE, *I shall be heard.*

audiar

audiēris or -re

audiētur

audiēmur

audiēmini

audientur

PERFECT, *I have been heard, I was heard.*

auditus sum

auditus es

auditus est

auditi sumus

auditi estis

auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT, *I had been heard.*

auditus eram

auditus erās

auditus erat

auditi erāmus

auditi erātis

auditi erant

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been heard.*

auditus erō

auditus eris

auditus erit

auditi erimus

auditi eritis

auditi erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

audiar

audiāris or -re

audiātur

audiāmur

audiāmini

audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audirer

audirēris or -re

audirētur

audirēmur

audirēmini

audirentur

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
auditus sim	audītī sīmus	auditus essem	audītī essēmus
auditus sis	audītī sītis	auditus essēs	audītī essētis
auditus sit	audītī sint	auditus esset	audītī essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING.—2. audire	auditor
3. —	auditor
PLUR.—2. audīmini	—
3. —	audiuntor

Infinitives.

Pres. audiri
Perf. auditus esse
Fut. audītum iri

Participles.

Perf. auditum
Gerund. audītū

258.

VOCABULARY.

admodum, adv., <i>very, somewhat, considerably.</i>	mūniō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -ītum, <i>fortify.</i>
audiō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), ¹ -ītum, <i>hear.</i>	perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, <i>come through, arrive.</i>
cis or citrā, prep. with acc., <i>this side of.</i>	praesidium, -ī (-iī), n., <i>garrison; protection.</i>
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, <i>come together, assemble.</i>	quō, rel. and interrog. adv., <i>whither, to which place; whither?</i>
fāma, -ae, f., <i>report; reputation, FAME.</i>	reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, <i>find (as a result of search).</i>
impediō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -ītum, <i>IMPEDE, hinder, obstruct.</i>	tum, adv., <i>then, at that time.</i>
longē, adv., <i>far (of distance); by far (of degree).</i>	veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, <i>come.</i>

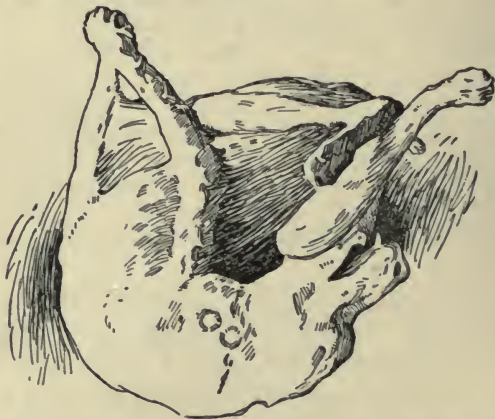
¹ Perfect stems ending in -iv may drop v in conjugation.

259. 1. Duo nūntiū, tum ā Caesare missī, magnō cum periculō in castra Labiēnī pervēnērunt. 2. Explōrātōrēs in Galliam ulteriōrem tribus diēbus¹ vēnērunt, ubi admodum perterritōs in silvīs longē ā castrīs Caesar eōs repperit. 3. Caesar praesidium in castrīs mūnītis reliquit et cum equitātū auxiliōrum magnīs itineribus in hiberna pervēnit, ubi fāmam dē victōriā Labiēnī audiit. 4. Quō cum Caesar

vēnisset, Gallī in castra undique conveniēbant, ut eum vidērent. 5. Cōpiaē Sēquanōrum adventū exercitūs Caesaris ita perterritī sunt, ut dēfēnsiōnis causā iter impedirent. 6. Germānī citrā flūmen Rhēnum diū fuerant, ut Rōmānōs ā flūmine prohibērent. 7. Turrēs admodum altae ad vallum castrōrum ab hostibus excitātae sunt, ut dēfēnsiō impedirētur. 8. Fāma dē coniūrātiōne Germānōrum iam ad Caesarem pervēnerat. Ille, cum castra longē ā flūmine Rhēno posita essent, ad eōs contendit.

¹ Abl.; translate *in* or *within*.

260. 1. The Gauls fortified their camps with walls. 2. The citizens came together from all sides when they heard the report. 3. The soldiers found all the pack animals far from the camp. 4. When the messengers had been heard by Caesar, he fortified the camp and left a garrison in it. 5. At that time he was greatly hindered by the forests through which he was hastening. 6. Scouts then arrived with messages about the approach of the army.



Body of watch dog left chained by his master at the destruction of Pompeii. The struggles of the dog and the agony of his death are clearly indicated by contortions of the body.

LESSON XXXVIII.

VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

261. Just as the third declension has a group of stems ending in -i, so the third conjugation has a small but important group of verbs whose present stem ends in -i, known as the **-iŏ verbs of the third conjugation**. This group numbers thirteen active verbs. They are:

capiŏ, <i>take, capture.</i>	quatiŏ, <i>shake.</i>
cupiŏ, <i>desire.</i>	rapiŏ, <i>seize.</i>
faciŏ, <i>make, do.</i>	sapiŏ, <i>understand.</i>
fodiŏ, <i>dig.</i>	compounds in -cutiŏ,
fugiŏ, <i>flee.</i>	<i>smite, -liciŏ, ensnare,</i>
iaciŏ, <i>throw.</i>	-spiciŏ, <i>see.</i>
pariŏ, <i>bring forth.</i>	

262. Conjugation of capiŏ, *I take.*

Principal Parts.			
PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
capiŏ	capere	cēpi	captum

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
capiŏ	capimus	capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capis	capitis	capiēbās	capiēbātis
capit	capiunt	capiēbat	capiēbant
FUTURE.		PERFECT.	
capiam	capiemus	cēpi	cēpimus
capies	capietis	cēpisti	cēpistis
capiet	capient	cēpit	cēperunt or -ēre
PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēperam	cēperāmus	cēperō	cēperimus
cēperās	cēperātis	cēperis	cēperitis
cēperat	cēperant	cēperit	cēperint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
capiam	capiāmus	caperem	caperēmus
capiās	capiātis	caperēs	caperētis
capiat	capiant	caperet	caperent
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
cēperim	cēperimus	cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēperis	cēperitis	cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēperit	cēperint	cēpisset	cēpissent

Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING.—2. cape	capitō
3. —	capitō
PLUR.—2. capite	capitōte
3. —	capiuntō

Infinitives.	Participles.	Gerunds.	Supines.
<i>Pres.</i> capere	<i>Pres.</i> capiēns	<i>Gen.</i> capiendī	<i>Acc.</i> captum
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	<i>Fut.</i> captūrus	<i>Dat.</i> capiendō	<i>Abl.</i> captū
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse		<i>Acc.</i> capiendum	
		<i>Abl.</i> capiendō	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
caperis or -re	capimini	capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāmini
capitur	capiuntur	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
FUTURE.		PERFECT.	
capiar	capiēmur	captus sum	capti sumus
capiēris or -re	capiēmini	captus es	capti estis
capietur	capientur	captus est	capti sunt
PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
captus eram	capti erāmus	captus erō	capti erimus
captus erās	capti erātis	captus eris	capti eritis
captus erat	capti erant	captus erit	capti erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
capiar	capiāmur	caperer	caperēmur
capiāris or -re	capiāminī	caperēris or -re	caperēminī
capiātur	capiantur	caperētur	caperentur
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
captus sim	captī simus	captus essem	captī essēmus
captus sīs	captī sītis	captus essēs	captī essētis
captus sit	captī sint	captus esset	captī essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SING.—2. capere	capitor
3. —	capitor
PLUR.—2. capimini	—
3. —	capiuntor

Infinitives.

Pres. capī
Perf. captus esse
Fut. captum irī

Participles.

Perf. captus
Gerund. capiendus

263.

VOCABULARY.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, CAPTURE, take.	fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee; escape from; shun.
certus, -a, -um, adj., CERTAIN, sure.	iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw.
coniciō, ¹ -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw, hurl.	inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, find (by chance).
cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, see.	lapis, -idis, m., stone.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do.	recipiō, ² -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, RECEIVE.
	respiō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look back.

Idioms.

certiorem facere, with accusative of the person, to inform.

certior factus sum, I was informed.

sē recipere, to retreat; to betake one's self; recover (from).

¹ Compound of con and iaciō. When a preposition compounds with a verb whose root vowel is a, this a usually becomes i. ² Compound of re and capiō. For vowel change see note 1.

264. 1. Explōrātōrēs Caesarem certiorem fēcērunt dē victōriā Germānōrum. 2. Caesar nōndum certior factus

erat dē impetū quem Gallī in exercitum Rōmānum fēcērant. 3. Gallī castra sua vallō fossāque mūniērunt. Militēs Caesaris tamen audācter in eōs impetum fēcērunt ac tēla et lapidēs iēcērunt. 4. Multa tēla in hostēs undique coniecta sunt, quī celeriter fūgērunt. 5. Hostēs sē in montem recēpērunt, sed nostrī māximā virtūte eōs in fugam dedērunt ac multōs eōrum cēpērunt. 6. Multi principēs cīvitātum Galliae in captō exercitū inventī sunt. 7. Caesar animōs principum verbīs cōfirmāvit, atque eōs in amīcitiam recēpit. 8. Cum respexissent atque Rōmānōs in castrīs suīs conspexissent, ad montēs sē statim recēpērunt.

265. 1. We shall inform Caesar of¹ the arrival of the messengers. 2. Caesar was immediately informed of this report. 3. Caesar found the road through the forest, of which he had been informed, but it was difficult, for he found in it many great stones. 4. The enemy had retired toward the mountain and had carried all their baggage with them.² 5. We looked back and saw the enemy also fleeing. 6. The enemy's camp at the foot of the mountain will be captured.

¹ of here = *about*, dē.

² sēcum, 184, note 3.



Strolling juggler and animal trainer.

LESSON XXXIX.

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

266. Deponent Verbs.—Certain verbs in all the conjugations have the *form* of the passive voice, though they retain the *meaning* of the active. These are called deponent verbs (*dēpōnēns*, *laying aside*), as having laid aside their active forms.

In the finite modes they differ in no respect from the passive forms of regular verbs. In the non-finite forms they differ from true passives as follows:

(a) **Participles.**—Deponent verbs have all four participles. The perfect participle may be either active or passive in meaning. The gerundive participle is always passive in meaning.

(b) **Infinitives.**—The future infinitive is always active in form, ending in *-ūrus esse*.

(c) Deponent verbs possess the gerund and supine in full.

267. Principal Parts of Deponents.

The principal parts of a deponent verb are the **present indicative**, **present infinitive**, and **perfect participle**. The perfect stem does not enter into the formation of deponents.

(a) The third conjugation *i* stem class contains three deponents and their compounds:

gradior, gradī, gressus, step.
patior, patī, passus, suffer; permit.
morior, morī, mortuus, die.

The future participle of *morior* is of the Fourth Conjugation, *morītūrus*; hence also the future infinitive, *morītūrus esse*.

268. Conjugation of Deponents.

Principal Parts.

Conj. I.	cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus, <i>attempt.</i>
Conj. II.	vereor, verērī, veritus, <i>fear.</i>
Conj. III.	sequor, sequī, secūtus, <i>follow.</i>
Conj. III., i stem.	patior, pati, passus, <i>suffer; permit.</i>
Conj. IV.	potior, potīrī, potītus, <i>gain possession of.</i>

Indicative.¹

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. III in -lor.	Conj. IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor	vereor	sequor	patior	potior
<i>Imp.</i>	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnūbor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	potītus sum
<i>Plpf.</i>	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	potītus eram
<i>Fut.Pf.</i>	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	verear	sequar	patiar	potiar
<i>Imp.</i>	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	potirer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	potītus sim
<i>Plpf.</i>	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	potītus essem

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	verēre	sequere	patere	potire
<i>Fut.</i>	conātor	verētor	sequitor	patitor	potitor

Infinitives.

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	pati	potīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	potītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	potītūrus esse

articiples.

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	patiēns	potiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	passūrus	potītūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	potītus
<i>Gndv.</i>	cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	potiendus

¹ A synopsis only is given of these verbs. The student should fill out the conjugation. *Giving the synopsis* of a verb means giving the first singular (or any person and number called for) of each tense of the finite modes, together with all the non-finite forms. In first person synopses, the second person of the imperative should be given, as the first person is lacking. (See Appendix D.)

Gerunds.

cōnandī	verendī	sequendī	patiendī	potiendī
cōnandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.	potiendō, etc.

Supines.

cōnātum	veritum	secūtum	passum	potitum
cōnātū	veritū	secūtū	passū	potitū

269. Semi-deponent Verbs.

(a) Four verbs and their compounds are active in the present system, but have no perfect stem and are deponent in the tenses of completed action. They are all intransitive and can form no passive.

audeō, audēre, ausus, *dare*.
 fidō, fidere, fesus, *trust, confide*.
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *rejoice*.
 soleō, solēre, solitus, *be accustomed*.

(b) Inversely semi-deponent is

revertor, revertī, revertī (perfect indicative), reversus (perfect participle), *turn back, return*, where the present system is deponent and the perfect system active.

270. Most Common Uses of the Subjunctive.

D. After verbs of fearing.

(1) A fear that *something will happen* is expressed by *nē* with the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

nam verēbātur *nē* Diviciāci animum offenderet, *for he feared that he would hurt the feelings of Diviciacus*.

(2) A fear that *something will not happen* is expressed by *ut* with the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēbant, *they feared the supply problem, that they could not readily be provided*.

271.

VOCABULARY.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus, dep., <i>attack.</i>	loquor, loquī, locūtus, dep., <i>speak.</i>
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactum, <i>compel;</i> <i>collect.</i>	proficiscor, -cisci, -fectus, dep., <i>set</i> <i>out, travel.</i>
colloquium, -ī (-iī), n., <i>interview,</i> <i>conference.</i>	quīntus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., <i>fifth.</i>
committō, -ere, -misi, -missum, COMMIT, <i>entrust.</i>	respondeō, -ēre, -ndī, -nsum, RESPOND, <i>answer, reply.</i>
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., <i>attempt, try.</i>	revertor, -ī, -ī, -sus, semi-dep., <i>turn back, return.</i>
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, <i>say; ap-</i> <i>point; call.</i>	sequor, sequī, secūtus, dep., <i>follow.</i>
diēs, diēi, m. (rarely f.), <i>day.</i>	vereor, -ērī, -itus, dep., <i>fear, be</i> <i>afraid.</i>
expeditus, -a, -um, adj., <i>unencum-</i> <i>bered; in light marching order.</i>	vetus, -eris, adj., 1 term., <i>ancient,</i> <i>old; former.</i>
inūria, -ae, f., INJURY.	videor, -ērī, vīsus, dep., <i>seem.</i>

272. 1. Diēs colloquī¹ dictus est, quintus ex eō diē: Caesar ē castris profectus ad quendam montem contendit, ubi Ariovistus erat. 2. Caesar legiōnem decimam expeditam sēcum duxerat, nam salūtem suam Ariovistō committere non ausus est. 3. Cum ad Ariovistum pervēnisset, multa dē veteribus iniuriis Ariovisti locūtus est. 4. Caesar ex equō² loquī coactus est, nam verēbātur nē Ariovistus decimam legiōnem aggredērētur. 5. Cum multa locūtus esset, Ariovistus respondit: "Tū," dixit, "mē in finēs meōs secūtus es: hostis quidem Germānōrum esse vidēris." 6. "Germānōrum hostis nōn sum," respondit Caesar, "sed Gallia mea prōvincia est. Tū in finēs Galliae vēnistī et militēs tui agrōs Gallōrum vastāverunt." 7. "Gallia prōvincia tua nōn est"; acriter dixit Ariovistus, "proelium pugnēmus, neque vereor ut Germānī vincant." 8. Itaque Ariovistus proeliō magnō superātus, sē ē Galliā recipere coactus est et in Germāniam revertī. Gallia tum obsidiōne liberārī vidēbātur.

¹ Dat.; translate for. ² Lit. from a horse; i. e., on horseback.

273. 1. I fear that you will not come into the camp.
 2. I shall try to send to you the unencumbered troops.
 3. I shall order the lieutenant to follow with all the baggage.
 4. I was compelled to follow the forces of the enemy, for I feared they would attack the allies. 5. This seems to be the place for the conference. 6. Ariovistus did not dare to attack Caesar.



Accident in a chariot race.

LESSON XL.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

274. (a) There are certain shades of meaning in the use of verbs which the regular tenses cannot express, but which the **future** and **gerundive participles** do express. These two participles are, therefore, associated with the tenses of **sum**, and the resulting compound forms are called the **periphrastic conjugations** (*periphrasis, a talking-around*).

(b) There are two periphrastic conjugations:

(1) The **active, or future periphrastic**, is formed by inflecting the future participle with the tenses of **sum**.

It expresses *intention* or *likelihood*; e. g.:

quod sēcum portātūrī erant, what they were going to carry with them; ipse imperium obtentūrus erat, he intended to seize the government himself.

(2) The **passive periphrastic** is formed by inflecting the gerundive participle with the tenses of **sum**.

It expresses *necessity* or *obligation*; e. g.:

concēdendum esse nōn putābat, he thought it was not to be granted; Caesarī omnia erant agenda, Caesar had to do everything.

275. Conjugation of the Periphrastics.

Periphrastics may be formed from any verb possessing the requisite stems (supine and present), and offer no difficulties in conjugation. A synopsis of the periphrastics of **mittō, I send**, is appended.

Principal Parts.

PRES. IND.

mittō

PRES. INF.

mittere

PERF. IND.

mīsi

SUPINE.

missum

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Infinitives.
<i>Pres.</i>	missūrus sum	missūrus sim	missūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	missūrus eram	missūrus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	missūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	missūrus fui	missūrus fuerim	missūrus fuisse
<i>Plpf.</i>	missūrus fueram	missūrus fuisset	
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	missūrus fuerō		

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Infinitives.
<i>Pres.</i>	mittendus sum	mittendus sim	mittendus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	mittendus eram	mittendus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	mittendus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	mittendus fui	mittendus fuerim	mittendus fuisse
<i>Plpf.</i>	mittendus fueram	mittendus fuisset	
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	mittendus fuerō		

Notes.—1. The participial members of these tense forms will, of course, agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

2. The translations of the above forms depend largely on the circumstances of their use. Approximately they are as follows:

Active Periphrastic.—*Pres.*: *I intend to send, I am going to send, I am likely to send.*

Imp.: *I intended to send, I was going to send, etc.*

Passive Periphrastic.—*Pres.*: *I am to be sent, I must be sent, I deserve to be sent.*

Imp.: *I was to be sent, I had to be sent, etc.*

276. Use of the Periphrastic.

(a) The active periphrastic shows no peculiarities of usage.

(b) In the passive periphrastic if the verb is transitive, the subject in Latin is the English object, and the person who must perform the act (*i. e.*, the subject in English) is

in the dative. If the verb is intransitive, the participle element of the tense form is neuter, and the person who must perform the act is dative, *e. g.*:

Caesar had to do everything, must be thought of as, *everything* (nominative) *had to be done by Caesar* (dative), **Caesarī omnia erant agenda**; *Caesar had to hurry*, must be thought of as, *it-had-to-be-hurried by Caesar*, **Caesarī mātūrandum erat**. The construction will be fully explained later.

277.

VOCABULARY.

anteā,¹ cpd. adv., *before, previously*.

difficultās, -ātis, f., DIFFICULTY.

dignitās, -ātis, f., DIGNITY, *worth*.

et . . . et, conj., *both . . . and*.

etiam, conj., *even, also*.

fossa, -ae, f., *moat, trench*.

numquam,² adv., *never*.

opus, -eris, n., *work, task*.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

post, prep. with acc. and adv.,
after, behind; afterward.

postea,³ cpd. adv., *afterward*.

primum, adv., *first*.

quam, adv., *how, as; with superl.,
as possible*.

quam⁴ primum, adv. phrase, *as
soon as possible*.

umquam, adv., *ever*.

¹ Anteā = ante ea. ² numquam = nē umquam; also written nunquam. ³ postea = post ea. ⁴ 161, c.

278. 1. Caesar turrim, quae post castra est, vallō fossāque est mūnitūrus, nam verētur nē hostēs ea expugnāre conentur. 2. Frūmentum etiam, quod sēcum portātūrī erant, Caesar cēpit. 3. Caesar, dignitātis causā populi Rōmānī, pontem in¹ Rhēnō factūrus est, cum opus magnae difficultātis sit. 4. Numquam anteā pontem in tantō flūmine quisquam fēcerat. 5. Vereor nē hostēs castra et vallō et fossā mūnitūrī sint. 6. Primum Caesarī aciēs instruenda est; postea exercitus hostium aggrediendus. 7. In Galliam quam primum lēgātis mātūrandum est. 8. Urbs statim est expugnanda, cum maxima sit quae umquam in Gallia vīsa est.

¹ Translate *over*; in is always used of bridge construction, since the piles or pontoons supporting military bridges were *in* the water.

279. 1. He is going to (intends to) pitch camp behind the mountain. 2. Even the enemy's fields are to be (must be) laid waste. 3. We¹ must arrive² in Gaul as soon as possible. 4. We intend to come to you as soon as possible. 5. You must conquer the Germans. 6. Do you not intend to make a bridge over the Rhine?

¹ Dat., 276, *b*. ² Neut. ptc. to be used in forming the periphrastic; 276, *b*, second example.



Flogging at school.

LESSON XLI.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Compounds of *sum*.

280. The verb *sum* forms numerous compounds, of which only two are irregular.

(a) *prōsum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfuī*, *prōfutūrus*, *be of advantage*, *aid*, inserts *d* before all forms of *sum* beginning with a vowel.

Indicative. Subjunctive. Imperative. Infinitives. Participles.

Present:

SING.— <i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōdesse</i>
<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdes</i>	
<i>prodest</i>		

PLUR.—*prōsumus*
prōdestis
prōsunt

Imperfect:

prōderam *prōdessem*

Future:

<i>prōderō</i>	<i>prōdestō</i>	<i>prōfutūrus</i> <i>esse</i>
----------------	-----------------	----------------------------------

Perfect:

<i>profuī</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuisse</i>
---------------	------------------	------------------

Pluperfect:

prōfueram *profuissem*

Future Perfect:

prōfuerō

(b) *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —, *be able* (first singular present indicative, *I am able*, *I can*). This important verb is compounded of *potis* or *pote*, *powerful*, and *sum*. Its full conjugation is given.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Infinitives.
Present:			
	SING.—possum potes potest	possim possis possit	posse
	PLUR.—possumus potestis possunt	possimus possitis possint	
Imperfect:			
	SING.—poteram poterās poterat	possem possēs posset	
	PLUR.—poterāmus poterātis poterant	possēmus possētis possent	
Future:			
	SING.—poterō poteris poterit		
	PLUR.—poterimus poteritis poterunt		
Perfect:			
	SING.—potuī potuistī potuit	potuerim potueris potuerit	potuisse
	PLUR.—potuimus potuistis potuērunt or -ēre	potuerimus potueritis potuerint	
Pluperfect:			
	SING.—potueram potuerās potuerat	potuissem potuissēs potuisset	
	PLUR.—potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant	potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent	

Future Perfect:

SING.—potuerō
potueris
potuerit

PLUR.—potuerimus
potueritis
potuerint

Notes.—1. There is no supine stem; and the imperative mode is necessarily wanting: *to be able* lies beyond command.

2. The present participle, *potēns*, is used as an adjective exclusively, meaning *powerful*.

3. To form a substitute for the future infinitive in verbs which have no supine stem, use *fore* (223, *d*, note 2) followed by a subjunctive clause with *ut*, *e. g.*:

putō fore ut possit, I think he will be able.

281. Construction after *possum*.

Possum governs the infinitive, *e. g.*:

id facere possum, I can do this.

In negative sentences the word order is **infinitive, negative, *possum***; *e. g.*:

id facere nōn possum, I cannot do this.

282. VOCABULARY.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., EQUAL; *fair, just; level*.

amplius, comp. adv., *more*.

centum, num. adj. indecl., *one hundred*.

cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish; exhaust; furnish*.

cōsequor, -quī, -cūtus, dep., *pursue; overtake; acquire, attain*.

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, about*.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be between; take part in*.

liberī, -ōrum, pl. m., *children* (not used in sing.).

passus, -ūs, m., *PACE*; *mille*

passūs, a MILE (lit., *a thousand paces*).

polliceor, -ērī, -itus, dep., *promise, offer*.

possum, *posse*, *potuī*, —, *be able* (first singular *I am able* = *I can*).

prōsum, -desse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be of advantage, benefit*.

quā, adv., *where, by which route*.

spatium, -ī (-iū), n., *SPACE* (used both of distance and time).

trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, ductum, *lead across*.

via, -ae, f., *WAY, road*.

283. 1. *Mōre populī Rōmānī iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare nōn possum.* 2. *Relinquēbātur ūna via per Sēquanōs, quā*

propter angustias iter facere non poterant. 3. Haedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 4. Ut reliquas copias Helvetiorum consequi posset, pontem in Arare fecit atque ita exercitum traduxit. 5. Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum, non amplius quam quinque aut sex milia passuum intererant. 6. Tela vitare in proeliis nulli¹ prouderit. 7. Ille unus ex omni ciuitate Haeduorum adduci non potuit ut² liberos suos obsides³ daret. 8. Hic locus aequo fere spatio⁴ ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. 9. Hi possunt conficere armata milia⁵ centum: ex eo numero milia sexaginta⁶ pollicentur. 10. Copiae Belgarum in unum locum coactae sunt, neque iam longe absunt.

¹ Dat. ind. obj. ² ut . . . daret, translate, to give, 234, A, 1. ³ Pred. appos. of liberos, as hostages. ⁴ by an almost equal distance. ⁵ Lit., a hundred armed thousands; translate, a hundred thousand armed men. ⁶ sexaginta, indecl. num. adj., sixty.

284. 1. Caesar could not give grain to any one. 2. That place was far distant from Caesar's camp. 3. The Belgians could not be induced to¹ fight. 4. The army could not march quickly on account of the narrow pass. 5. To flee never benefits a soldier.² 6. I can see the camp across the river.

¹ Use ut with subjunctive. ² Dat. ind. obj.



Coin showing general addressing his troops.



Coin with figure of Britannia; about 138 A. D.

LESSON XLII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

285. *ferō, ferre*,¹ *tulī, lātum*, BEAR, *carry*.

		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Pres.	SING.— <i>ferō</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferar</i>	
	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferās</i>	<i>ferris (-re)</i>	<i>ferāris (-re)</i>	
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferat</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>ferātur</i>	
	PLUR.— <i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>	
	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	<i>ferāmini</i>	
	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>ferant</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	<i>ferantur</i>	
Imp.	SING.— <i>ferēbam</i> °	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferrer</i>	
	<i>ferēbās</i>	<i>ferrēs</i>	<i>ferēbāris (-re)</i>	<i>ferrēris (-re)</i>	
	<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>ferret</i>	<i>ferēbātur</i>	<i>ferrētur</i>	
	PLUR.— <i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i>	
	<i>ferēbātis</i>	<i>ferrētis</i>	<i>ferēbāmini</i>	<i>ferrēmini</i>	
	<i>ferēbant</i>	<i>ferrent</i>	<i>ferēbantur</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>	
Fut.	SING.— <i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>		
	<i>ferēs</i>		<i>ferēris (-re)</i>		
	<i>feret</i>		<i>ferētur</i>		
	PLUR.— <i>ferēmus</i>		<i>ferēmur</i>		
	<i>ferētis</i>		<i>ferēmini</i>		
	<i>ferent</i>		<i>ferentur</i>		
Perf.	<i>tulī</i> ²	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>	
Plpf.	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulissem</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>	
Fut. Pf.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>		

¹ This verb may be said to belong to the Third Conjugation. Its irregularity consists in dropping the stem vowel in many forms and becoming a true consonant stem. Such forms will readily be detected in conjugating.

² The perfect and supine stems are adopted as in the case of *sum*, but there are no irregularities in the forms built upon them.

Imperative.		Imperative.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres. <i>fer</i> ¹	<i>ferite</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
Fut. <i>*fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	<i>fertor</i>	—
<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>
Infinitives.		Infinitives.	
Pres. <i>ferre</i>		<i>ferri</i>	
Perf. <i>tulisse</i>		<i>lātus esse</i>	
Fut. <i>lātūrus esse</i>		<i>lātum iri</i>	
Participles.		Participles.	
Pres. <i>ferēns</i>		Perf. <i>lātus</i>	
Fut. <i>lātūrus</i>		Gerund. <i>ferendus</i>	
Gerunds.— <i>ferendī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō.</i>			
Supines.— <i>lātum, -ū.</i>			

¹ 249, note 1.

286.

VOCABULARY.

<i>afferō</i> , ¹ <i>-ferre, attulī, allātum,</i> <i>bring.</i>	<i>ferō, ferre, tulī, latum, BEAR;</i> <i>carry; endure.</i>
<i>calamitās, -tātis, f., CALAMITY,</i> <i>disaster.</i>	<i>Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian.</i>
<i>cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum,</i> <i>bring together, gather, collect.</i>	<i>inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum, bring</i> <i>in or upon; inflict; bring forward</i> <i>(arguments).</i>
<i>crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent.</i>	<i>perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, en-</i> <i>duce.</i>
<i>dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., exhausted.</i>	<i>pēs, pedis, m., foot.</i>
<i>dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail;</i> <i>revolt.</i>	<i>ratiō, -ōnis, f., reason, plan, list.</i>
<i>differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum,</i> <i>DIFFER.</i>	<i>referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring</i> <i>back, report.</i>
<i>efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry</i> <i>out; elate (cf. sup. stem).</i>	<i>rūmor, -ōris, m., RUMOR.</i>
	<i>subsidiū, -ī (-iī), n., aid; pl., in</i> <i>military sense, reserves.</i>

Idioms.

bellum inferre, to make war upon (governs dative).

pedem referre, to retreat.

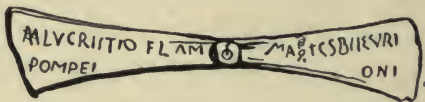
se conferre, to betake one's self to.

¹ *Afferō* = *adferō*. In the compounds of *ferō* the final consonant of a preposition generally assimilates to the initial consonant of the verb-form; thus *d + f = ff; d + t = tt; d + l = ll*. So *n + l = ll*, etc.

287. 1. Militum alius alii¹ subsidium ferēbat. 2. Hi omnēs inter sē differunt. 3. Magnam frūmentī cōpiam sibi² quemque effere iubet. 4. Ea pars Helvētiaē cīvitatīs maximam calamitātem populō³ Rōmānō intulerat. 5. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī pedem referēbant. 6. In castrīs Helvētiōrum litterae repertae sunt et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in litterīs ratiō erat cōrum quī arma ferre poterant. 7. Nōn ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt: bellum nōn intulī, sed mē dēfendī. 8. Cum Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernīs esset, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 9. Sē suaque omnia in oppidum munitum contulērunt. 10. Amīcī meī omnēs calamitātes perferunt, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō³ Rōmānō bellum intulērunt.

¹ Dat.; for idiom, see 141. ² Dat., for *himself*. ³ Dat. ind. obj.

288. 1. The army of Caesar brought very great disaster upon the Gauls. 2. We shall carry back the message to the commander. 3. The enemy retreated and betook themselves to a mountain not far from the camp. 4. You will bring aid to the garrison in the town. 5. You are not making war on Caesar, but Caesar on you. 6. All calamities will have been endured by the Gauls.



Letter, sealed and addressed. The address is: "Marcus Lucretius, Priest of Mars, Decurion; Pompeii."

LESSON XLIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

289. eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go.

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	is	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
Imp.	ībam		īrem	
Fut.	ibō			
Perf.	ivī or iī	ivimus or iimus	iverim or ierim	
	ivistī or iistī	ivistis or iistis		
	ivit or iit	ivērunt or iērunt		
Plpf.	iveram or ieram		ivissem or iissem	
Fut. pf.	iverō or ierō			

Imperative.			Infinitives.
	SING.	PLUR.	
Pres.	i	ite	Pres. ire
Fut.	itō	itōte	Perf. ivisse or iisse
	itō	euntō	Fut. itūrus esse

Participles.			
Active.	Pres. iēns	Passive.	Perf. itum
	Fut. itūrus	(impersonal) Gndv.	eundum
Gerunds.—eundi, -ndō, etc.			Supines.—itum, -ū.

(a) The present participle is irregularly declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Masc., Fem.	Neut.		Masc., Fem.	Neut.
Nom. iēns	iēns		euntēs	euntia
Gen. euntis	euntis		euntium	euntium
Dat. euntī	euntī		euntibus	euntibus
Acc. euntem	iēns		euntis (-ēs)	euntia
Voc. iēns	iēns		euntēs	euntia
Abl. eunte (-ī)	eunte (-ī)		euntibus	euntibus

(b) *adeō*, approach, visit; *ineō*, enter; *trānseō*, cross, are transitive and are conjugated regularly in the passive. The present passive of *adeō* is given.

SING.	PLUR.
adeor	adīmur
adiris (-re)	adiminī
aditur	adeuntur

290.

VOCABULARY.

adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go to, approach, reach, visit.

dē, prep. with abl., during (in expressions of time).

eō, ire, iī or iī, itum, go.

exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go out.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to grain. *rēs frūmentāria*, a supply of grain, supplies.

incendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum, set fire to, burn.

maleficium, -ī (-iī), n., damage, harm.

nēmō, m.; defective: dat. *nēminī*,

acc. *nēminem*, other cases wanting, no one, nobody.

nōnnullus, -a, -um, adj., some (lit., not none).

praetereā, adv., besides.

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go back, return.

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., third.

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, cross.

vadum, -ī, n., ford, shallow water (cf. Eng. WADE).

vigilia, -ae, f., watch (a division of the night: the Romans divided the night into four watches).

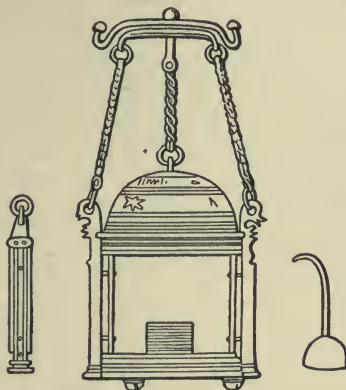
291. 1. *Sī nēmō praetereā mē sequētur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō.* 2. *Ipse eōdem¹ itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit.* 3. *Iī² quī reī frūmentāriae causā ierant trāns flūmen, nōndum redierant.* 4. *Helvētīi ē*

fīnibus suis cum omnibus copiīs exiērunt. 5. Obsidēs inter sē dant: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant. 6. Dē tertiā vigiliā cum tribus legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 7. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus est, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. 8. Mūnitiōnēs castrōrum adire nōn poterat. 9. Quisque eōrum suam cīvitātem adiit omnēsque, quī arma ferre poterant, ad bellum coēgit. 10. Omnēs vicōs quōs adire potuerant, incendērunt atque ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiīs³ contendērunt.

¹ By the same route. ² Nom. pl. of is. ³ Translate *with*; *cum* is sometimes omitted.

292. 1. You will go to the war without me. 2. Each of them saw his¹ friends in the city when he returned. 3. I shall lead my army into farther Gaul and burn all the towns that I can reach. 4. Many rivers can be crossed by a ford in some places. 5. The Helvetii will go out from their boundaries and lay waste the land of their neighbors. 6. Many tribes of Gaul were visited by Caesar.

¹ Use the proper case of *suus*.



Lantern from Herculaneum.

LESSON XLIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

293. *fiō, fierī, factus, be made, become,*

supplies the passive voice of *faciō*, the forms on the supine stem being the regular passive inflection of that verb. It is irregular in the present system only, which has active form and passive meaning, the opposite of a deponent.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.
Pres. SING.—	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fiam</i>	
	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fī</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiat</i>	
PLUR.—	<i>fīmus</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>	
	<i>fītis</i>	<i>fiātis</i>	<i>fīte</i>
	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiant</i>	
Imp. SING.—	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fierem</i>	
	<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>fierēs</i>	
	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fieret</i>	
PLUR.—	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>	
	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>fierētis</i>	
	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>fierent</i>	
Fut. SING.—	<i>fiam</i>		
	<i>fīēs</i>		<i>fitō</i>
	<i>fiet</i>		<i>fitō</i>
PLUR.—	<i>fīemus</i>		
	<i>fīētis</i>		<i>fitōte</i>
	<i>fient</i>		<i>fiuntō</i>
Perf.	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>	
Plpf.	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>	
Fut. pf.	<i>factus erō</i>		

	Infinitives.	Participles.
Pres.	fi ^r i	Perf. factus
Perf.	factus esse	Gerund. faciendus
Fut.	factum iri	

Note.—i in the stem is long except before -er.

294. Preteritive Verbs.

Three verbs are regularly conjugated on the perfect stem only:

coepi, coepisse, *began*.
 meminī, meminisse, *remember*.
 ōdī, ōdisse, *hate*.

		Indicative.	
Perf.	coepi	meminī	ōdī
Plpf.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
Fut. pf.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

		Subjunctive.	
Perf.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
Plpf.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

Imperative.
 SING.—mementō
 PLUR.—mementōte

		Infinitives.	
Perf.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
Fut.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse.

		Participles.	
Perf.	coeptus		ōsus
Fut.	coeptūrus		osūrus

(a) Remnants of other stems than the perfect sometimes occur.

(b) Coepi always assumes a passive form, coeptus sum, when it governs a passive infinitive, *e. g.*:

urbem oppugnāre coepit, *he began to besiege the city*; but urbs oppugnāri coepta est, *the city began to be besieged*.

(c) *meminī* and *odī* have the meaning of the present system throughout.

(d) A few other verbs are used preteritively, *i. e.*, the perfect system, active or passive, is used with the meaning of the present, *e. g.*:

cognōscō, I learn; pf., cognōvī, I know (i. e., I have learned).

295.

VOCABULARY.

<i>coepī, coepisse, pret., began, have begun.</i>	<i>libertās, -tātis, f., LIBERTY, freedom.</i>
<i>condiciō, -ōnis, f., CONDITION; terms.</i>	<i>mūrus, -ī, m., wall.</i>
<i>Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., Dumnorix (a chief of the Haedui).</i>	<i>nōmen, -inis, n., name; reason; pretense.</i>
<i>fiō, fierī, factus, irreg. pass., be made, become; occur, happen.</i>	<i>ōdī, ōdisse, pret., hate.</i>
<i>impeditus, -a, -um, adj., IMPEDED, encumbered.</i>	<i>perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish; accomplish; bring about.</i>
<i>initium, -ī (-iū), n., beginning.</i>	<i>servitūs, -tūtis, f., SERVITUDE, slavery.</i>

Idioms.

*in itinere,*¹ *on the march.*

ex itinere, on the march.

¹ Used of events which can occur while marching; *ex itinere* is used of acts involving a temporary divergence from the line of march. Thus, *they crossed a river on the march*, would require *in*; *they besieged a town on the march*, *ex*.

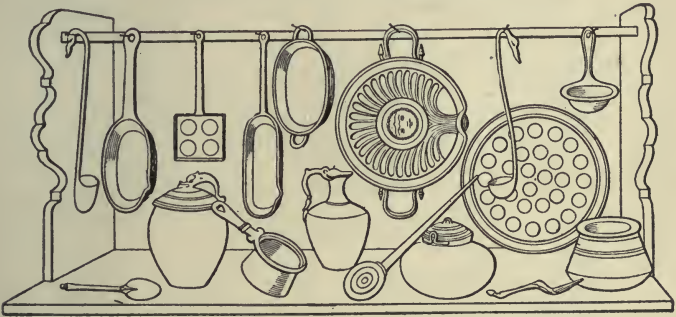
296. 1. Undique in hostēs impetus fit. 2. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut¹ minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. 3. Hostēs, sī hōc flūmen nostrī trānsībunt, eōrum adventum in rīpam expectābunt; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī² fiet, impeditōs in flūmine aggredientur. 4. Ariovistus autem Gallōrum cōpiās magnō proeliō vicit, quod proelium ad magnam urbem factum est. 5. Id oppidum ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. 6. Ubi rēs frūmentāria hostēs dēficere coepit, quisque eōrum in suam cīvitātem revertit. 7. Undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt.

8. Quaedam rēs inter eōs agī coep̄tae, neque perfectae erant.
 9. Dumnorīx ōdit etiam suō nōmine³ Caesarem et Rōmānōs.
 10. Omnēs autem hominēs libertātem amant, et condiōnem servitūtis odērunt.

¹ ut . . . possent, *that they were able*; the clause is the subject of *fiēbat*. ² Gerund, *of crossing*. ³ *For reasons of his own*.

297. 1. A fierce attack will be made on the town. 2. The forces of Caesar began to attack the Gauls on the march. 3. I began to besiege the town with all my forces. 4. The town began to be besieged. 5. I hate the Gauls for reasons of my own. 6. From these things it happened that¹ the wall was not yet finished.

¹ ut with verb in the subjunctive.



Kitchen utensils from Pompeii.

LESSON XLV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

298. (a) volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing.*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling.*
 mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *prefer.*

(b) nōlō is a contracted form of nōn volō; mālō, of magis volō. nōlō alone has the imperative mode.

(c) Indicative.

Present:

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
volō	volumus	nōlō	nōlumus	mālō	mālumus
vīs	vultis ¹	nōn vīs	nōn vultis	māvis	māvultis
vult ¹	volunt	nōn vult	nōlunt	māvult	mālunt

Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plpf.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. pf.	voluerō	nōluerō	maluerō

Subjunctive.

Present:

	SING.	PLUR.		
	velim	velimus	nōlim	mālim
	velis	velitis		
	velit	velint		
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem	
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	
Plpf.	voluissem	nōluissem	maluissem	

Imperative.

	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	nōli	nōlite
Fut.	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

¹ Also volt, vultis; nōn volt, nōn vultis; māvult, māvultis.

		Infinitives.	
Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

		Participle.
Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

299.

VOCABULARY.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, AC- CEPT, <i>receive</i> .	legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., <i>legion- ary</i> .
Arar, -is, m., <i>Arar</i> (a river in <i>Gaul</i>).	māiōrēs, -um, pl. m., <i>ancestors, elders</i> .
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, <i>turn aside</i> .	mālō, mālle, malui, —, <i>prefer, wish rather</i> .
condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, CONDUCT, <i>lead; bring together</i> .	maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, REMAIN, <i>stay</i> .
cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., CONSENT, <i>agreement</i> .	nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, <i>be unwill- ing, not wish</i> .
dēcertō, I, <i>fight, fight to a finish</i> .	petō, -ere, -ivī (-ii), -itum, <i>request, seek</i> . ¹
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, <i>turn aside, depart</i> .	temptō, I, <i>try, test</i> ; TEMPT.
experior, -irī, -pertus, dep., <i>try, test</i> .	tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, <i>lift; take away; break off</i> .
iterum, adv., <i>again, a second time</i> .	volō, velle, volui, —, <i>wish</i> .

¹ The person of whom the request is made stands in the ablative with ā (ab).

300. 1. In eam partem ibimus atque ibi erimus,¹ ubi tū nōs constitueris atque esse volueris. 2. Si quid volunt, revertantur. 3. Iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. 4. Quāsdam rēs habēmus quās, ex cōmūnī consensū, ā Caesare petere volumus. 5. Caesar quod neque colloquium tolli² volēbat neque salūtem suam Gal-lōrum equitātui committere audēbat, legiōnāriōs mīlites legiōnis decimae sēcum ad Ariovistum condūxit. 6. Si iterum experiri vultis, ego iterum parātus sum decertāre. 7. In eā libertāte, quām ā māiōribus accēpērunt, manēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālunt. 8. Quae-

cumque bella³ gerī velīs, sine ūllō labōre et periculō cōficiēs.
 9. Quod saepius⁴ fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, in prō-
 vinciam revertī contendit. 10. Suīs quoque rēbus⁵ eōs
 timēre voluit.

¹ *We shall be; i. e., stay.* ² Pres. inf. pass.; its subj. is *colloquium*, *did not wish the conference to be broken off.* ³ Subj. of *gerī* which depends on *velīs*; *whatever wars you may wish to be waged.* ⁴ *too often*; 161, a.
⁵ Dat., translate *for*.

301. 1. I do not wish the conference to be broken off.
 2. I had wished to hasten into Gaul as soon as possible. 3.
 I wish to go with you rather than to stay in the city. 4.
 I wish the battle to be fought. 5. I am not willing to endure
 servitude. 6. If you wish, let us set out to the mountains.



Kitchen stove; house of Pansa, Pompeii.

LESSON XLVI.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

302.

Impersonal Verbs.

Certain verbs can have no personal subject (*i. e.*, no noun, or pronoun representing a noun), and are regularly found only in the third singular and in the infinitive. These are **impersonal verbs**, and may be divided into four classes.

(a) Verbs admitting as subject only an *infinitive*, a *clause*, or sometimes a *neuter pronoun*. Such are:

accidit, contingit, ēvenit, fit, *it happens.*

licet, *it is permitted, one may.*

placet, vidētur, *it seems best.*

oportet, necesse est, *it is necessary, one must.*

(b) Many intransitives admit a passive form used impersonally, *e. g.*:

pugnātum est, literally *it was fought*; *i. e.*, *they fought, the fight lasted, there was a fight.*

(c) Certain verbs of feeling; such as

paenitet, *repent of*; **pudet**, *be ashamed of or ashamed to*; **miseret**, *pity*; **taedet**, *be tired, etc.*

(d) Verbs expressing natural phenomena, *e. g.*:

pluit, *it is raining*, **tonat**, *it thunders, etc.*

303. Conjugation of the Impersonals.

Principal Parts.

Conj. I. cōstat, cōstāre, cōstitit, —, *it is evident, it is certain.*

Conj. II. licet, licēre, licuit, licitum, *it is permitted, one may.*

Conj. III. accidit, accidere, accidit, —, *it happens.*

Conj. IV. ēvenit, ēvenīre, ēvēnit, —, *it happens, it comes about.*

Indicative.

Pres.	cōstat	licet	accidit	ēvenit
Imp.	cōstābat	licēbat	accidēbat	ēveniēbat
Fut.	cōstābit	licēbit	accidet	ēveniet
Perf.	cōstitit	licuit	accidit	ēvēnit
Plpf.	cōstitērat	licuerat	acciderat	ēvēnerat
Fut. pf.	cōstitērit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit

Subjunctive.

Pres.	cōstet	liceat	accidat	ēveniat
Imp.	cōstāret	licēret	accideret	ēveniēret
Perf.	cōstitērit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit
Plpf.	cōstitisset	licuisset	accidisset	ēvēnisset

Infinitives.

Pres.	constāre	licēre	accidere	ēvenīre
Perf.	constitisse	licuisse	accidisse	ēvēnisse
Fut. (rare)	—	—	—	ēventūrum esse

304. Use of the Most Common Impersonals.

(a) oportet and cōstat take an infinitive as subject; and if the infinitive itself has a subject, it must be in the accusative case, *e. g.*:

poenam sequi oportet, *it was necessary that the penalty should follow.*

(b) licet usually governs a dative of the person and takes as subject an infinitive, *e. g.*:

tibi venire licet, *it is permitted to you to come, you may come.*

(c) **accidit, contingit, ēvenit, fit**, take as subject a clause introduced by **ut** and having its verb in the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, *it chanced that the moon was full*; **fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur**, *it happened that they roamed less widely*.

Remark.—The *it* in the above examples is not the subject; it is not even a real pronoun. To say that the subject of such an impersonal expression is “*it* understood,” is absurd. The subject of the impersonal in each instance is the infinitive or clause which accompanies it. A sure method of determining the subject when in doubt is to treat the clause as the answer to a question and ask yourself the question. Thus under (a), *what is necessary?* “*That the penalty should follow*” is the necessary thing; hence, **poenam sequi** is the subject of **oportet**. So under (b): *what is permitted?* “*To come*,” hence, **venire** is the subject of **licet**. In the same way in (c): *what chanced?* *That the moon was full*; hence, **ut esset lūna plēna**, the whole clause, is the subject of **accidit**.

305.

VOCABULARY.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, happen:	necesse, indecl. adj., necessary:
accidit, impers., it happens.	necesse est, impers. vb. phrase,
barbarus, -a, -um, adj. BARBAROUS	<i>it is necessary.</i>
as noun, <i>barbarian</i> .	oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., it ought,
bellō, I, make war.	<i>it must, it is necessary.</i>
cōstat, -stāre, -stitit, impers., it	regiō, -ōnis, f., REGION.
<i>is certain, it is evident.</i>	subitō, adv., suddenly.
dē, prep. with acc., down from;	terra, -ae, f., earth; land.
<i>for (with expressions of cause).</i>	ūsus, -ūs, m., USE, advantage.
iūs, iūris, n., right; power; law.	voluntās, -tātis, f., wish; good will;
licet, -ere, -uit, -itum, impers., it	<i>consent.</i>
<i>is permitted; one may.</i>	

Idiom.

ex ūsū, to the advantage of; for the good of.

306. 1. *Ea rēs nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Romanī accidit.* 2. *Praetereā accidit, quod¹ fieri necesse erat, ut milites ab signis discēderent.* 3. *Magnum numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat.* 4. *Nāvēs in eam regiōnem cōgunt, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum esse cōstābat.* 5. *Multīs dē causīs acciderat*

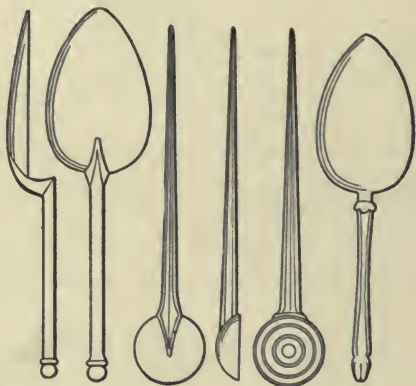
ut subitō Gallī bellandī² cōnsilium caperent. 6. Sī quid tū vīs, tē ad mē venīre oportet. 7. Nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impedīrī. 8. Alius aliam causam inferēbat, atque petēbat ut³ ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret. 9. Vōbīs dē vestrā salūte cum Caesare agere licet. 10. Ita ācerrimō proeliō diū pugnātum est.

¹ Rel. pron., *what*; its anteced. is the *ut* clause, subj. of *accidit*.

² Gen. of the gerund explaining and depending on *cōnsilium*. ³ The *ut* clause is the purpose of the request, 234, A, 1.

307. 1. It was evident that¹ Caesar would attack² the Germans. 2. You may go to the city. 3. It happens that Caesar is leading a large army into Gaul. 4. You ought to be sent into Gaul. 5. Caesar ought to besiege the town with all his forces. 6. There was a fierce fight³ in front of the camp.

¹ This word is not to be represented at all in the Latin; it is necessarily involved in the infinitive which the principal verb requires. ² Fut. inf. ³ Say, "It was fought fiercely."



Roman spoons.

PART II.

SYNTAX.

LESSON XLVII.

In treating the Syntax of the Noun, the cases will be presented in the order of their importance as elements of the simple sentence: the Nominative as the case of the subject; the Accusative and Dative as the cases of the object, direct and indirect respectively; the Genitive and Ablative as the modifying cases.

THE NOMINATIVE.

308. Rule I.—The subject of a finite verb must be in the nominative, *e. g.*:

Caesar putat, *Caesar thinks.*

Remark.—The nominative occurs only as the subject of a verb, or as the appositive, attributive or predicate, to a subject.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

309. The Accusative as Object.

I. Rule II.—The direct object of an action must be in the accusative, *e. g.*:

Sēquani lēgātōs mittunt, *the Sequani send envoys.* Caesar pontem facit, *Caesar builds a bridge.*

II. Rule III.—Verbs signifying make, choose, call, regard, and the like, govern two accusatives referring to the same person or thing: of these, one is the direct object; the other, its predicate appositive, *e. g.*:

magistrātum Vergobretum appellant Haeduī, *the Haedui call their ruler the Vergobret.* Commium rēgem ibi cōstituerat, *he had appointed Commius King there.*

(a) In the passive of this construction, the direct object becomes the subject nominative, the predicate appositive also by necessity becoming nominative, *e. g.*:

Commius rēx ibi cōstitūtus erat, *Commius had been appointed King there.*

(b) The predicate in this construction may be an adjective, *e. g.*:

Hōs Suēbī humiliōres redēgērunt, *the Swabians rendered these more humble.*

III. Rule. IV.—Transitive compounds of trāns may govern two accusatives: one the object of the verb, the other governed by the preposition, *e. g.*:

Funditōrēs pontem trādūcit, *he leads the slingers over the bridge.*

IV. Rule V.—Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, concealing take two accusatives, one referring to the person, the other to the thing, *e. g.*:

Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *meanwhile Caesar daily demanded corn from the Haedui.* Si quid ille sē vēlit, *if he wished anything from him.*

310.

VOCABULARY.

absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, <i>be absent; be distant.</i>	proximus, -a, -um, <i>superl. adj., nearest; next; last (preceding).</i>
Atrebātēs, -um, m., <i>Atrebates, a Gallic tribe.</i>	publicus, -a, -um, <i>adj., PUBLIC.</i>
aut, conj., <i>or.</i>	reddō, -ere, reddidi, redditum, <i>give back; render.</i>
aut . . . aut, <i>either . . . or.</i>	redigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, <i>reduce; render.</i>
expellō, -ere, puli, -pulsum, <i>EX-PEL, drive out.</i>	senātus, -ūs, m., <i>SENATE.</i>
frāter, -tris, m., <i>brother.</i>	sōlum, <i>adv., only.</i>
humilis, -e, <i>adj., HUMBLE.</i>	Suēbī, -ōrum, m., <i>the Suebi (Swabians), a Germanic tribe.</i>
īfirmus, -a, -um, <i>adj., INFIRM, weak; unreliable.</i>	tūtus, -a, -um, <i>adj., safe, protected.</i>
lēx, lēgis, f., <i>law.</i>	Ubīi, -ōrum, m., <i>the Ubii, a Germanic tribe.</i>
opportūnus, -a, -um, <i>adj., OPPORTUNE; suitable.</i>	ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, <i>dep., avenge, punish.</i>
privātus, -a, -um, <i>adj., PRIVATE.</i>	
proptereā, <i>adv., on that account;</i>	
proptereā quod, <i>because (cpd. conj.).</i>	

Idiom.

nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

311. 1. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est. 2. Cum ipse Atrebātēs superāasset,¹ Commium rēgem ibi cōstituerat. 3. Haeduī amīcī frātresque populī Rōmānī saepe ā senātū appellātī erant. 4. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et quae² post eum erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. 5. Haec tibi dīxī nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferās, atque ut obsidēs illis reddās. 6. Tōta gēns prope ad servitūtem redacta est. 7. Suēbī, cum Ubiōs fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen servōs sibi fēcērunt atque humillimōs infīrmissimōsque redēgērunt. 8. Hunc locum ex omnī Galliā opportunissimum sibi iūdicavērunt.

¹ Contract form of *superāvisset*, plp. subjunc. ² *quae . . . erant*, *what was back of him*: *tūta* modifies this clause.

312. 1. Caesar rendered the town safe from the enemy by a wall and a moat. 2. Caesar appointed Labienus lieutenant of the tenth legion. 3. The Roman senate called the Haedui friends and allies. 4. The city was called Rome. 5. The senate of the Roman people had once¹ called Ariovistus king and friend. 6. The river will render our camp safe.

¹ *quondam*.



Soldier with scaling-ladder.

LESSON XLVIII.

THE ACCUSATIVE (Continued).

313. The Accusative of Extent—Time, Space, Power.

I. Accusative of Duration of Time.

Rule VI.—Duration of time is expressed by the accusative, *e. g.*:

rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat, he had held power many years.

II. Accusative of Extent of Space.

Rule VII.—Extent of space is expressed by the accusative, *e. g.*:

finēs mīlia passuum CCXL patēbant, their territories extended for 240 miles.

(a) The distance between two places may be regarded as the extent of space from one to the other and be expressed by the accusative, *e. g.*:

cum Caesar mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, when Caesar was five miles distant. (See 353, II, a.)

III. Adverbial Accusative.

Rule VIII.—The accusative, chiefly of neuter adjectives and pronouns, rarely of nouns, may be used adverbially to express the extent of power or action, *e. g.*:

auctōritās plūrimum valet, the influence is very strong; cum equitātū nihil possent, since they were not at all strong in cavalry.

314. The Accusative of Limit of Motion—Terminal Accusative.

Rule IX.—Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad, in, or sub; but the preposition is omitted with names of towns and with domus, *e. g.*:

in Galliam vēnit, *he came into Gaul*; Rōmam revertit, *he returned to Rome*; domum rediērunt, *they went back home*.

315.

VOCABULARY.

annus, -ī, m., *year*.
 auctōritās, -tātis, f., *AUTHORITY, influence*.
 commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies*.
 commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move; alarm, induce*.
 domus, -ūs, f., *house*; acc., *domum, home*; loc., *domī, at home*.
 dum, conj., *while; until*.
 ēgredior, -dī, -gressus, dep., *march out*.

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *MAGISTRATE*.
 moror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., *delay; wait*.
 nihil, indecl. n., *nothing*; adverbially, *not at all*.
 ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
 paucī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., *few*.
 spēs, speī, f., *hope*.
 tumultus, -ūs, m., *TUMULT*.
 valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be strong*.

316. 1. Hī magnopere inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant. 2. Dum paucōs diēs rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, magnus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit. 3. Hic locus ab hostibus mille passūs aberat. 4. Multa milia passuum hostēs secūtus est. 5. Nihil ego eā rē commoveor. 6. Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat¹, quī plūs possint¹ quam ipsī magistrātūs. 7. Ego tum plūrimum in Galliā poteram; sed ille minimum,² quod puer erat. 8. Ob eam rem ex civitāte fūgī et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī. 9. Magnō cum tumultū castrīs ēgressī sunt, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire mātūrāret. 10. Spēs domum redeundi³ sublata⁴ est.

¹ Translate these subjunctives exactly like indicatives. ² Supply poterat. ³ Gerund. ⁴ Pf. pass. of tollō.

317. 1. I will wait five days. 2. Caesar's troops pursued the cavalry of the Belgians five miles. 3. Let us seek the first place of the journey and arrive at home. 4. Caesar was very powerful in Gaul. 5. The authority of the Belgians is less strong than (that) of the Germans. 6. Caesar ordered his (men) to hasten to Ocelum.



Carpenter's shop, from painting at Herculaneum.

LESSON XLIX.

THE DATIVE.

318. The Dative as Indirect Object.

I. Rule X.—The indirect object is that toward which the action of the verb is directed, and must be in the dative, *e. g.*:

Dumnorigi filiam suam dat, *he gives his daughter to Dumnorix.*

(a) This example may be translated with equal correctness, *he gives Dumnorix his daughter.* These two nouns are certainly not in the same relation to the verb; hence they cannot both be in the same case. The real relation of the noun to the verb is the important point; the English form of expression often counts for little. So with the person after verbs of *seizing*, *e. g.*:

Caesar scutum militi dētrahit, *Caesar seizes a shield from a soldier.* The action is exerted *on* the shield and *toward* the soldier; hence, militi is an indirect object, though the English idiom requires *from*.

II. Rule XI.—Many verbs transitive in English govern a dative of indirect object in Latin; such are favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also, believe, persuade; command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, spare, indulge, threaten, envy, and the like, *e. g.*:

Helvētiis favet, *he favors the Helvetii*; Dumnorigi persuādet, *he persuades Dumnorix.*

(a) Verbs which in the active govern a dative are impersonal in the passive, and still govern the dative, *e. g.*:

hīs persuādēri nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded*; lit., *it could not be persuaded to these.*

(b) The action of these verbs was regarded in Latin as *directed toward* the object rather than *exerted on* it.

III. Dative with Compounds.

Rule XII.—Many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con,¹ in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super, govern a dative of indirect object; and if the simple verb is transitive, the compound takes both direct and indirect objects, *e. g.*:

legiōnibus quaestōrem praefēcit, *he appointed a quaestor over the legions*; ante id tempus accidit nūlli, *it has happened to no one before this time*.

¹ The composition-form of cum. The euphonic changes of the prepositions before consonants will be readily acquired. Often such change is optional, and both the euphonic and original forms occur, *e. g.*:

afficiō and adficiō, etc.

319.

VOCABULARY.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, *yield, give way*.

cōfidō, -ere, -fisus, semi-dep.,
CONFIDE, *trust*.

Cotta, -ae, m., *Cotta*, an officer of Caesar.

ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum, *take away; rescue*.

mors, mortis, f., *death*.

Nervii, -ōrum, m., *Nervii*, a Gallic tribe.

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum,
OFFER.

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum,
PERSUADE.

praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put in command, put in charge*.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in command, be in charge*.

quoniam, conj., *since, because*.

Sabinus, -ī, m., *Sabinus*, an officer of Caesar.

satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum,
SATISFY; *apologize*.

seu (or sive), conj., *or if, whether*.

seu . . . seu, *whether* . . . *or*.

sponte, abl. of obsolete spons, f.,
by the will.

studeō, -ere, -uī, —, *be eager for; pay attention to*.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, surrender*.

ūnā, adv., *together, along with*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen.
utriusque, adj. (cf. 140), *each*
(of two); pl., *both*.

vel, conj., *or*; vel . . . vel, *either*
or.

Idioms.

novae rēs, *revolution, political change*.

suā sponte (third person), *of one's own accord, voluntarily*.

320. 1. Allobrogibus ipsī vel persuādēbimus vel eōs cōgēmus. 2. Hīs militibus Sabīnum et Cottam, lēgātōs, praeesse iussit. 3. Caesar singulis¹ legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praefecit. 4. Huic legiōnī Caesar propter virtūtem maximē cōfidēbat. 5. Sēquanīs cum suā spontē persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mittunt. 6. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus student et ad bellum celeriter excitantur; omnēs autem hominēs libertātī student et condiōnem servitūtis odērunt. 7. Sic ex castrīs proficiscuntur, ut quibus³ esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste. 8. Sī Haeduīs⁴ dē iniuriīs quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus⁴ satisfaciētis, pācem vōbīscum faciam. 9. Quoniam est fortunae cēdendum,⁵ ad utramque rem mē vōbīs offerō, seu morte⁶ meā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu mē eis vīvum trādere vultis. 10. Rōmānī ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haediūs libertātem ēreptūrī sunt.

¹ Lit., *single lieutenants over single legions*; translate, *a lieutenant over each legion*. ³ Supply the antecedent and translate the subjunctive like a p.p. indic.; *as men who had not been persuaded by an enemy* (lit., *to whom it had not*, etc.). ⁴ Compounds of *satis*, *enough*, govern the dative. ⁵ *Since I must yield to fortune*. ⁶ *by (means of) my death*.

321. 1. I have been compelled to give my army to Caesar. 2. Caesar was in command of the Roman army. 3. I shall put you in command of the legion which the Gauls have sent me. 4. Let us always yield to fortune. 5. Almost all barbarians are eager for liberty. 6. The Allobroges are eager for revolution and have persuaded the Haeduī to revolt.



Water pitcher from Pompeii.

LESSON L.

THE DATIVE (Continued).

322. The Dative as the Case of Direction of Influence.

I. Dative of Reference.

Rule XIII.—A noun concerned, however remotely, in receiving the effect of an action, or liable to benefit or injury from it, is put in the dative, *e. g.*:

praeterita Diviciācō frātrī condōnat, *he pardons the past for (the sake of) Diviciacus, his brother*; sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, *if they wished to be guiltless in his sight (lit. to him)*.

II. Dative with Adjectives.

Rule XIV.—Adjectives, and occasional nouns and adverbs, derived from verbs which take the dative, as well as adjectives of nearness, fitness, likeness, service, inclination, and their contraries govern the dative, *e. g.*:

castris idōneum locum dēligit, *he selects a place suitable for a camp*; Diviciācō maximam fidem habēbat, *he had the greatest confidence in Diviciacus*; proximīque sunt Germānis, *and they are nearest to the Germans*.

VOCABULARY.

323.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj., pf. ptc. of
accipiō, *acceptable, popular*.
comparō, I, *provide*.
cur, adv., *why*.
dēligō, -ere, -ēgī, -ectum, *select*.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep*.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*.
imperō, I, *command; demand*.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold*;

OBTAIN.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*.
possessiō, -ōnis, f., *POSSESSION*.
principātus, -ūs, m., *sovereignty*.
profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure*.
prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw*;
throw down or away.
similis, -e, adj., *like*, *SIMILAR*.
tempus, -oris, n., *time*.

Idiom.

in animō esse with dat. of person,¹ lit., to be in mind to a person; i. e., to have in mind, to intend.

¹ e. g., Caesarī in animō est; lit., it is in mind to Caesar; i. e., Caesar intends.

324. 1. Sī mihi¹ purgātī² esse vultis, eōs redūcite. 2. Sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs³ prōiēcērunt. 3. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus⁴ ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cur in meās possessiōnēs vēnisti? 4. Britannīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit,⁵ eōsque in Galliam addūcī iussit. 5. Helvētiīs erat in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum iter facere. 6. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. 7. Profectiō similis fugae vidēbātur. 8. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat. 9. Caesar locum castrīs idōneum cēpit atque ad hostēs contendit. 10. Principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maxīmē plēbī acceptus erat.

¹ Before me or in my sight; lit., with reference to me. ² Nom. pl. of purgātus, -a, -um, guiltless. ³ Lit., at the feet to C.; make good English out of it. ⁴ Abl., from. ⁵ duplicō, I, double.

325. 1. Labienus was guiltless in-the-sight-of-Caesar. 2. What does Caesar want for himself in Gaul? 3. This farmer holds the land nearest the river. 4. That field was suitable for grain. 5. Why did you cast yourself at the commander's feet? 6. Divitiacus was a most acceptable friend to Caesar.



Roman helmets.

LESSON LI.

THE DATIVE (Continued).

326. The Dative as the Case of Direction of Influence (Continued).

III. Dative of Possessor.

Rule XV.—The dative of the possessor is used with *sum* to express the fact of possession, *e. g.*:

quid in Galliā negōtī Caesarī est? *What business has Caesar in Gaul?* (lit., *what of business is to C.*); *mercātōribus est aditus*, *traders have access.*

IV. Dative of Purpose or Service.

Rule XVI.—When the purpose for which an act is performed, or a thing is made, is designed, or serves, can be expressed by a noun, that noun stands in the dative, *e. g.*:

equitātum auxiliō Caesarī miserant, *they had sent the cavalry for aid to Caesar* (or *to the assistance of C.*); *locum domiciliō dēligunt*, *they select a place for a home.*

(a) Such datives are frequently, though not necessarily, connected with another dative, which is a **reference dative** of the person or thing, *e. g.*:

Caesarī in the above example.

(b) The dative of purpose is often equivalent to a mere predicate noun in English whenever *serve* may be substituted for *be*, *e. g.*:

amicitia populī Rōmānī mihi ornāmentō est, *the friendship of the Roman people is* (i. e., *serves as*) *an ornament to me.*

V. Dative of Agent.

Rule XVII.—The person who must perform the act expressed by a passive periphrastic is put in the dative, *e. g.*:

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything*; (lit., *everything was to be done by C.*).

(a) The passive periphrastic of intransitive verbs is impersonal, e. g.:

Caesarī mātūrandum est, *Caesar must hasten* (lit., *haste-must-be-made by C.*).

(b) The leading idea in the passive periphrastic is obligation to act: the agent is the person toward whom the obligation is directed.

327.

VOCABULARY.

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, *summon*.

cōsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand*.

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss, harm*.

domicilium, -ī (-iū), n., *home*.

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader*.

multitūdō, -dinis, f., *MULTITUDE, great number*.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., *ravage*.

potestās, -tātis, f., *power; opportunity*.

praeter, prep. with acc., *except*.

solum, -ī, n., *SOIL*.

328. 1. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī mihi praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō, esse oportet. 2. Agrōs Rēmōrum populantur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī sunt. 3. Nōbīs praeter agrī solum nihil est. 4. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī¹ potestās erat nullī. 5. Nullus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus. 6. Locum domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnisimum iūdicāverint. 7. Germānī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī sunt. 8. Nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat. 9. Omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum, quod Helvētiū fēcērunt. 10. Caesarī mātūrandum erat.

¹ Gerund, depends on potestās.

329. 1. The friendship of Caesar was a protection to his allies. 2. The general selected a place for the battle. 3. Caesar had to fight alone. 4. The Gauls had no access to the province. 5. We have nothing but¹ our swords. 6. I will send to your aid² the legion which Labienus commands.³

¹ Here *but* = *except*; use praeter. ² Say for aid to you. ³ Use praesum.

LESSON LII.

THE GENITIVE.

330. The Genitive with Nouns.

I. Rule XVIII.—A noun used to describe or define another noun, not meaning the same thing,¹ is put in the Genitive.

Such genitives may be:

1. Possessive.—Here possession is implied, not asserted (326, III). This use of the genitive is the same as the English possessive case, *e. g.*:

agrōs Remōrum vastābant, they were devastating the lands of the Remi; in exercitū Caesaris, in Caesar's army.

2. Partitive, expressing that of which a part is spoken of, *e. g.*:

partem cōpiārum mīsit, he sent part of the troops; hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, of all these the Belgae are the bravest.

(a) Certain common neuter words of quantity govern a partitive genitive. Most important among these are:

tantum, so much.

nihil, nothing.

quantum, how much.

quid, what.

plūs, more.

satis, enough.

minus, less.

e. g.: tantum periculī, so much danger (lit., so much of danger); nihil vīni, no wine at all (lit., nothing of wine); quid consilī est? what is the plan? (lit., what of plan is there?).

3. Material or Composition, *e. g.*:

aciem instruxit legiōnum veterānārum, he drew up a line (consisting) of veteran legions.

4. Subjective.

5. Objective.

These are best treated together. In both, the governing noun is derived from a verb or suggests verb action: the genitive represents the subject or the object, respectively, of the verb idea contained in the governing noun, *e. g.*:

subjective: sōlis occāsū, at sunset (lit., setting of the sun); objective: regnī cupiditate inductus, led by desire for royal power.

The following example illustrates both uses:

prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī, for the former injuries of (i. e., inflicted by) the Helvetii of (i. e., upon) the Roman people.

Sometimes an expression may be either subjective or objective, *e. g.*:

in cōspectū militum, in sight of the soldiers, may denote a position whence the soldiers may see or may be seen.

6. Attributive or Explanatory.—Often the genitive after a noun cannot be assigned to any of the above classes, *e. g.*:

iniūria retentōrum equitum, the offense of detaining the knights.

¹ When one noun describes another which means the same thing, we have appositives (72).

331.

VOCABULARY.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus, dep., attack.

dēditio, -ōnis, f., surrender.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach, tell, show.

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come between.

laus, laudis, f., praise.

negōtium, -ī (-iī), n., business; difficulty.

occāsus, -ūs, m., a setting.

omnīnō, adv., at all; only.

patior, patī, passus, dep., permit; suffer.

quartus, -a, -um, num. adj., fourth.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., four.

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, RETAIN, detain.

satis, adv., sufficiently: as indecl. noun, enough.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun.

tot, indecl. adj., so many.

usque, adv., even, quite (in expressions of extent).

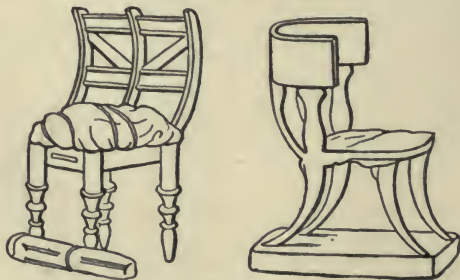
vīnum, -ī, n., WINE.

332. 1. Inter singulās¹ legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnus numerus intercēdit, neque est quicquam negōtī legiōnēs sub sarcinīs² adorīrī. 2. Quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī est? 3. Quid meī consilī est? Docēbō tē. 4. Nihil patiuntur vīnī inferrī, quod eā rē remittitur virtūs. 5. Triplicem³ aciem īnstruxit legiōnum quattuor. 6. Ab hōrā ferē quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnābātur. 7. Utrōsque et laudis cupiditās⁴ et timor ignōminiae⁵ ad virtūtem excitābat. 8. Sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum,⁶ rebelliō⁷ facta post dēditionem, tot cīvitātum coniūratiō. 9. Domum reditiōnis⁸ spēs sublāta est. 10. Hostēs castrīs satis praesidī relinquēbant.

¹ Between the single legions, i. e., between each two. ² Sarcina, -ae, f., pack, i. e., baggage carried by a soldier on the march. ³ Triplex, -icis, adj., TRIPLE. ⁴ Cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire. ⁵ Ignōminia, -ae, f., disgrace. ⁶ The offense of detaining the knights; lit., the offense of the knights detained. ⁷ Rebelliō, -ōnis, f., REBELLION. ⁸ Reditiō, -ōnis, f., a return.

333. 1. The arrival of Caesar made an end of the fight. 2. What is your plan, Labienus? 3. I will take away the hope of flight. 4. A column of four legions was marching into farther Gaul. 5. Caesar sent part of his forces to the assistance¹ of Labienus. 6. A man's desire for praise is always great.

¹ Say, for aid to L.



Chairs.

LESSON LIII.

THE GENITIVE (Continued).

334. The Genitive with Nouns (Continued).

II. Genitive of Quality.

Rule XIX.—A noun and adjective may stand together in the genitive describing another noun, *e. g.*:

sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis, they are wild men and of great valor; here the adjective *ferī* and the phrase *magnae virtūtis* modify *hominēs* in precisely the same way.

1. The **Genitive of Measure** is to be classed under the preceding rule, the dimensions of an object being often expressed by the genitive, *e. g.*:

trium diērum iter, a march of three days or a three days' march; fossa quīndecim pedum, a fifteen-foot trench.

335. The Genitive with Adjectives.

Certain adjectives require after them a noun to complete their meaning. Thus, *peritus*, *skilled in*, requires a noun to tell in what the skill lies; *cupidus*, *desirous*, is incomplete without a statement of the object of desire.

Rule XX.—Adjectives requiring a noun to complete their meaning govern the genitive: such are adjectives of desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their contraries, and many participles of like meaning, *e. g.*:

rei militāris peritissimus, most skilled in military matters; cupidi bellandī, fond of warring.

336.

VOCABULARY.

circiter, adv., *about*.

circuitus, -ūs, m., CIRCUIT.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager, desirous*.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, FIERCE*.

lātītūdo, -dinis, f., *width*.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; armed band*.

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilled*.

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forward*.

praesertim, adv., *especially*.

vīs, vīs, f.; pl. vīrēs, -ium, *force; pl., strength*.

337. 1. Aditus ducentōrum¹ pedum in lātītūdinem relin-
quēbātur; hunc locum altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum magnī
ponderis² lapidēs in mūrō collocābant. 2. Sunt hominēs
ferī magnaēque virtūtis. 3. Hī tantae virtūtis hominēs
ausī sunt trānsīre lātissimum flūmen. 4. Quibus manibus
aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulī³ corporis
tantī oneris⁴ turrīm movēbunt? 5. Castra in altitūdinem
pedum duodecim⁵ vallō fossāque duodēvīginti⁶ pedum mūnīre
iussit. 6. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium. 7.
Is cupidus rērum novārum erat, cupidus imperī, magnī
animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis. 8. Postea vallō
passuum in circuitū quīndecim⁷ mīlium crēbrisque castellis
mūniunt oppidum. 9. Hūius rei sunt longē perītissimī
Aquitānī. 10. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris⁸ perītissimus
habēbātur, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

¹ Ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred; 176, I, e.* ² Pondus, -eris, n., *weight* (origin of Eng. word POUND). ³ Tantulus, -a, -um, adj., *so small*.
⁴ Onus, -eris, *weight, load.* ⁵ Twelve. ⁶ Eighteen. ⁷ Fifteen. ⁸ Rēs
militāris, *military matters*.

338. 1. In the forests of Gaul are mountains of great size.
2. These men of very great courage made a sharp attack on
our troops. 3. A river three feet in depth was between our
camp and the enemy's town. 4. The Belgians are most
skilled in war. 5. The Gauls were always eager for a revolu-
tion. 6. The Romans were men of small body but of great
strength.

339. Less Common Uses of the Genitive.—The genitives given in this section are met with in the reading of Caesar, but occur so seldom that they are here introduced for reference only and should not be included in the regular work.

THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

I. Predicate Genitive of the Possessor.

Rule XXI.—The possessive genitive may stand in predicate, especially with sum and fiō, in expressions equivalent to belong to, property of, duty of, mark of, characteristic of, and similar phrases, *e. g.*:

dē bellō iūdicium imperātōris est, the decision about the war belongs to (lit., is of) the commander; est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuetūdinis, for this is (characteristic) of Gallic custom.

II. Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

Rule XXII.—Verbs signifying remember and forget govern the genitive, *e. g.*:

reminiscerētur veteris incommodī, let him remember the former defeat; sī contumēliae oblivisci vellet, if he were willing to forget the insult.

III. Genitive with Impersonals.

Rule XXIII.—Impersonal verbs of feeling take the accusative of the person affected and the genitive of the cause of the feeling, *e. g.*:

quōrum eōs paenitere necesse est, of which they must repent.

IV. Genitive of Interest.

Rule XXIV.—The impersonal interest, *it concerns*, takes a genitive of the person or thing concerned, *e. g.*:

rei publicae communisque salutis interest, it concerns the State and the general safety.

V. Genitive of Indefinite Value.

Rule XXV.—Sum and verbs of estimate and value take a genitive of indefinite price or value, *e. g.*:

tanti eiūs apud Caesarem gratia est, his good will is so valuable to Caesar; cuius auctoritās magnī habēbātur, whose influence was highly valued.

LESSON LIV.

THE ABLATIVE.

340. The Ablative Expressing Explanatory Circumstance.

I. Ablative of Cause.

Rule XXVI.—The Ablative, either alone or with ab, dē, ex, expresses the cause of an action, state, or feeling, *e. g.*:

hīs rēbus fiēbat, *for these reasons it happened*; certā dē causā, *for a certain reason*.

(a) That by or in accordance with which anything is done is a causal expression and stands in the ablative, *e. g.*:

mōre populī Rōmānī, *in accordance with the custom of the Roman people*; *i. e.*, *because it is the custom*.

II. Ablative of Manner.

Rule XXVII.—The Ablative, usually with cum, expresses the manner of an action; but if an adjective agrees with the noun, cum may be omitted, *e. g.*:

multīs cum lacrimīs, *with many tears*; magnō flētū, *with great lamentation*. These examples show how the usage varies under precisely similar conditions.

III. Ablative of Accompaniment.

Rule XXVIII.—The Ablative with cum expresses accompaniment; but in military expressions, especially with cōpiīs, cum may be omitted, *e. g.*:

Crassum cum cohortibus xii in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, *he orders Crassus to start for Aquitania with twelve cohorts*; subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs, *he kept close on their heels with all his forces*.

341.

VOCABULARY.

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum,
become accustomed.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, report.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., INCREDIBLE.

inflūō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxum, FLOW
into.

permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,
influence, alarm.

regnum, -ī, n., kingdom, power.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep.,
follow closely, follow up.

vōx, vōcis, f., VOICE, shout.

342. 1. Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ordoque agminis aliter erat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. 2. Odit etiam suō nōmine¹ Caesarem et Rōmānōs. 3. Galli, celeritatē Rōmānōrum permoti, legātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 4. Flūmen est Arar quod in Rhodanum influit incrēdibili lēnitātē.² 5. Eō itinere magnō cum periculō mercatōrēs ire cōsuerant.³ 6. Ita ancipitī⁴ proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. 7. Cupiditatē regnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat. 8. Suā victoriā glōriābantur.⁵ 9. Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit et in hostēs ire coepit. 10. Equitēs, quī auxiliī causā ab civitatē missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, domum contendērunt.

¹ *In his own name; i. e., for reasons of his own.* ² *lēnitās, -tātis, f., gentleness.* ³ *For cōnsuēverant.* ⁴ *anceps, ancipitis, adj., 1 term., doubtful.* ⁵ *glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, dep., boast: that which is boasted of is the cause of the boasting.*

343. 1. The Germans with the rest of their troops will follow Caesar closely. 2. He was eager for a revolution for reasons of his own. 3. We shall go by this road with the greatest danger. 4. Disturbed by these things, Caesar hastened into farther Gaul with a very great army. 5. The Germans crossed the Rhine because of the grain in Gaul. 6. Induced by letters of Caesar, Labienus came to him quickly.

LESSON LV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

344. The Ablative Expressing Explanatory Circumstance (Continued).

IV. Ablative of Means or Instrument.

Rule XXIX.—The ablative without a preposition expresses the means or instrument by which an action is accomplished, *e. g.*:

Means: Rhodanus vadō trānsitur, *the Rhone is crossed by a ford*;
Instrument: tēlis repulsī, *driven back by spears*.

(a) These uses of the ablative shade into each other by almost imperceptible gradations, and there is large liberty of choice in identification of them. Thus, there is very slight distinction of relation between *he came with soldiers* and *he came with danger*: between means and instrument there is a distinction of tangibility alone; you may frighten a man by a *threat* (means) or by a *club* (instrument, a tangible thing), and both expressions answer the questions, *how did you frighten him?* and *why was he frightened?*

V. Ablative of Agent.

Rule XXX.—Voluntary agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), *e. g.*:

Haedui ā Caesare in servitūtem redacti sunt, *the Haedui have been reduced to slavery by Caesar*.

(a) The **agent** is distinguished from the **instrument** by the fact that it has life and the **will** to act.

VI. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

Rule XXXI.—The ablative is used to indicate the attendant circumstances of an action or situation, *e. g.*:

equitēs parī intervallō cōstitērunt, the cavalry took their stand at an equal distance; quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi poterant, who could less easily attain this under our rule.

345.

VOCABULARY.

dēcerno, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,	imperium, -ī (-īī), n.,
decide, decree.	rule; government; command, order.
dēspērō, I, DESPAIR.	repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum,
ēnūntiō, I, ANNOUNCE.	REPEL, REPULSE.

346. 1. Ipse dē¹ quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque ante sē mittit. 2. Ab eisdem² nostra cōsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 3. Haeduī ā Caesare in servitūtem redactī sunt. 4. Montēs ā maximā multitūdine hostium tenentur. 5. Eārum rērum ā nostris fieri nihil poterat. 6. Imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn solum dē regnō dēspērat sed etiam dē eā gratiā quam habet. 7. Reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs, multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt. 8. Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat: sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum erat, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis.³

¹ During. ² By the same persons. ³ 339, I: nor was it consistent with his own nor the Roman people's dignity.

347. 1. The army of the Germans was conquered by Caesar in a great battle. 2. Dumnorix was frightened by Caesar. 3. Dumnorix was frightened by Caesar's speech. 4. The camp was fortified by a very high wall. 5. I shall hasten against the enemy by the same route by which they fled. 6. The auxiliaries were sent to me by Caesar and marched with the greatest speed.

LESSON LVI.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

348. Ablative with Certain Deponents.

Rule XXXII.—Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds govern the ablative, *e. g.*:

frūmentō ūti minus poterat, *he was less able to use the grain*; Galliae imperio potiri, *to gain control of Gaul*; omnibus in vitā commodis fruuntur, *they enjoy all good things in life*.

349. Ablative of Respect.

Rule XXXIII.—That in respect to which an assertion is made or an estimate taken is put in the ablative, *e. g.*:

hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt, *these all differ from each other in language, institutions, and laws*.

(a) This construction is also often called the **ablative of specification**. A good test of it in determining syntax is to insert the words *in respect to* in translating a doubtful ablative: if this makes intelligible English, the construction is a respect ablative, *e. g.*:

In the above example we may say *differ in respect to language*.

350.

VOCABULARY.

contentiō, -ōnis, f., CONTENTION.

institūtum, -ī, n., INSTITUTION;

determination.

lingua, -ae, f., language.

octō, indecl. num. adj., EIGHT.

potior, -īrī, -ītus, dep., gain possession of.

sex, indecl. num. adj., SIX.

totidem, indecl. adj., just as many.

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, dep., USE.

351. 1. Tōtī Galliae bellum inferunt imperiōque potiuntur. 2. Eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus

subvēxerat,¹ minus ūtī poterat, proptereā quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. 3. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. 4. Neque ipsī, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui cum Sēquanīs habuerant, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsī erant. 5. Quem ūsum bellī habent Britannī, aut quibus institūtis ūtuntur? 6. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. 7. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs. 8. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, aberat mīlia passuum octō. 9. Nervii equitātū nihil² poterant. 10. Haec cīvitas longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum.

¹ *subvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum, bring up:* both flūmine and nāvibus express the means by which this transportation was effected. ² *Could do nothing, 313, III.*

352. 1. The Romans used the Gauls' grain for a whole year. 2. The enemy will gain possession of the town, for it is not fortified. 3. I shall use three horses in this battle. 4. Caesar and I differ from each other in language. 5. A large town, Ocelum by name, is near the river. 6. The Germans are not-at-all strong in infantry, but their cavalry is very powerful, for they use good horses.



Double lamp from Pompeii.

LESSON LVII.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

353. The Ablative as the Case of Comparison and Contrast.

I. **Quam**, *than*, may be omitted from a comparison when the nouns compared are in the nominative or accusative. A case must then do duty for **quam** in expressing the comparison. This case is the ablative.

Ablative with Comparatives.

Rule XXXIV.—The comparative degree, when quam is omitted, governs the ablative, *e. g.*:

cum celerius omnium opīniōne vēnisset, when he had come more quickly than the belief of all (*i. e.*, than all believed possible); *ā Bibracte nōn amplius milibus passuum octōdecim aberat*, he was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte.

(a) This is really a respect construction. Thus: *A is greater than B* means that *in respect to B, A is the greater*.

(b) **plūs**, *more*; **amplius**, *more*; **minus**, *less*; **longius**, *farther*, sometimes have no effect on the case of the following noun, *e. g.*:

Sabis flūmen nōn amplius milia passuum decem aberat, the Sabis river was not more than ten miles away.

II. A construction involving the idea of comparison is that of difference in size or quality.

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

Rule XXXV.—The amount by which one thing exceeds or is less than another is expressed by the ablative, *e. g.*:

Hibernia, dīmidiō minor quam Britannia, Hibernia, smaller by half than Britain.

(a) The distance between two places may be regarded as the degree of difference between their respective positions, and be expressed by the ablative, *e. g.*:

hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs utriusque aberat, *this place was about an equal distance from the camp of each.* (See 313, II, a.)

354.

VOCABULARY.

eō, adv., *thither, there.*

minor, -us, adj., comp. of *parvus*,
less, smaller.

multō, abl. of *multus*, *much, by far.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *extend.*

paulō, abl. of *paulus*, *by a little, a little.*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,
PROCEED, go forward.

queror, *querī*, *questus*, dep., *complain.*

355. 1. *Eō*¹ *celerius omnium ōpiniōne vēnit.* 2. *Castra amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.* 3. *Iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnābātur.* 4. *Aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur.* 5. *Ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs*² *equitēs habēbant.* 6. *Multō etiam gravius queritur.* 7. *Eī, quī paulō longius prōcesserant, arcessendī erant.* 8. *Quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidio*³ *minor, ut existimātur, quam Britannia.*

¹ Adv. ² *Octingenti*, -ae, -a, *eight hundred.* ³ *Dīmidium*, -ī (-īi), n., *a half.*

356. 1. *Ariovistus' army was greater by a thousand men than Caesar's.* 2. *The river is more than two hundred miles long.* 3. *We were marching more than three days.* 4. *Caesar marched much farther and a little more swiftly than the Gauls.* 5. *A river of more than three feet in depth divided our men from the enemy.* 6. *Caesar built (made) the bridge quicker than all believed possible.*¹

¹ Say, "quicker than the opinion of all."

LESSON LVIII.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

357. Ablative of Quality.

Rule XXXVI.—A noun and adjective may stand together in the ablative describing another noun, *e. g.*:

hominēs inimicō animō, *men of unfriendly disposition.*

(a) This construction is used interchangeably with the Genitive of Quality (334, II.), except that *measure* (334, II, 1) is always genitive.

358. Ablative of Separation.

Rule XXXVII.—Most verbs and adjectives signifying cessation, deprivation, exclusion, lack, liberation, and the like take the ablative of that from which the separation occurs, *e. g.*:

suīs finibus prohibent, *they keep them out of their boundaries*; *diem iam quintum cibō caruerat*, *five days already had he been without food.*

(a) Such verbs and adjectives are also found with prepositions, *e. g.*:

ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre, *to keep the enemy's attack from the towns.*

359.

VOCABULARY.

apud, prep. with acc., *at, near* (of place); *among, in the presence of* (of persons).

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness.*

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *learn; know.*

concursum, -ūs, m., *a running together, massing.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down; disappoint.*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *DE-SIST, cease.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *eminent, remarkable.*

magnitūdō, -inis, f., *size.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *NOBILITY.*

nūdō, I, *lay bare, strip, clear.*

premō, -ere, *pressī, pressu* crowd, *PRESS*; pass., *be hard pressed.*

360. 1. Boiī ēgregiā virtūte cognitī erant.¹ 2. Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur. 3. Ipse² est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. 4. Iecius, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad eum mittit. 5. Germānī ingentī³ magnitūdine corporum, incrēdibilī virtūte erant. 6. Quae⁴ pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbātur, eō auxilium ferēbant. 7. Frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēbant. 8. Nōs nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēmus. 9. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsīre cōnātī sunt. 10. Operis mūnitiōne et mīlitum concursū repulsī, hōc cōnātū⁵ dēstitērunt.

¹ Were known (to be), 292, d. ² It is D. himself. ³ ingēns, -ntis, adj., enormous. ⁴ The antecedent (here pars) frequently stands in the relative clause and is represented in the principal clause by a demonstrative (here the dem. adv. eō). ⁵ cōnātus, -ūs, m., an attempt.

361. 1. The Roman armies have always been of remarkable valor. 2. The Gauls with difficulty keep the Germans out of their lands. 3. I will keep your army from grain and supplies and will attack it impeded in the forests. 4. Caesar was a man of great popularity among the Romans. 5. The Romans, with stones and spears, quickly cleared the wall of defenders. 6. A tower of enormous (ingēns) size was near the gate of the camp.



Boxing gloves, caestūs. These were of leather weighted with lead and iron to increase the force of the blow.

LESSON LIX.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

362. Ablative of Place and Time.

I. Ablative of Place Where.

Rule XXXVIII.—Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with *in*, but names of towns and domus are put in the locative (135), *e. g.*:

in Itāliā, in Italy; Romae, in Rome; Ōceli, in Ocelum; nihil domi erat, there was nothing at home.

(a) If the noun of place is general rather than definite, *locus, pars*, etc.; or if it has *tōtus, cunctus, omnis*, *all, whole*, agreeing with it; or if any other idea than mere place (*i. e.*, *cause, means*, etc.) is associated with it, the preposition *in* is usually omitted, *e. g.*:

aliēnō locō, in an unfavorable place; tōtā Galliā, in all Gaul; exercitum castris continuit, he kept the army in camp, i. e., restrained the men not merely in the fortified enclosure, but by means of it.

II. Ablative of Place Whence.

Rule XXXIX.—Place whence is regularly expressed by the Ablative with ab, dē, ex; but the preposition is omitted with names of towns and with domus, *e. g.*:

ex urbe profectus est, he set out from the city; Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome; domō profectus est, he set out from home.

III. Ablative of Time.

Rule XL.—Time when and time within which are expressed by the Ablative, *e. g.*:

eō tempore, at that time; tertiā vigiliā, in the third watch; diēbus decem opus effectum est, the work was finished in ten days.

363.

VOCABULARY.

dēnique, adv., *finally*.ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out*.efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish*;
EFFECT, *render*.interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill*.pater, -tris, m., *father*.perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *extend, construct*.quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, -itum, IN-
QUIRE; *seek*.utrimque, adv., *on both sides*.

364. 1. Locō prō castrīs nātūrā¹ opportūnō atque idōneō, fossam perdūxit. 2. Acrīter utrimque usque ad vesperum² pugnātum est: sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit. 3. Proximō diē, institūtō suō, Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit. 4. Sabīnus locō omnibus rēbus idōneō castrīs sēsē tenēbat. 5. Multō dēnique diē³ per explōrātōrēs Caesar haec cognōvit. 6. Diēbus decem omne opus effectum est atque exercitus trādūcitur. 7. Rhodanus nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. 8. Hīc pāgus⁴ ūnus, cum domō exisset⁵ patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cōnsulem interfēcerat. 9. Nōn solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs plūrimum poterat. 10. Tōtis trepidātur⁶ castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit.

¹ May be explained either by 340, I, or by 349. ² Vesper, -erī, m., *evening*. ³ Multō . . . diē, an idiom: *late in the day*. ⁴ Pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton*. ⁵ Plp. subjunc. of exeō: for exivisset. ⁶ Trepidō, I, *show fear*: used impersonally (302, b); translate, *there is a commotion*.

365. 1. Caesar kept his army in a place suitable for a camp. 2. On the same day he proceeded two miles. 3. At the fourth hour with soldiers and guides he set out to the aid of Caesar. 4. In two years Caesar will have subdued all Germany. 5. He was very powerful at home in Rome. 6. He marched from Rome to Ocelum in three months.

366. Less Common Uses of the Ablative.—The ablatives given in this section are met with in the reading of Caesar,

but occur so seldom that they are here introduced for reference only and should not be included in the regular work.

I. Ablative of Source or Origin.

Rule XLI.—Words of descent, birth, derivation, and the like take an ablative of the source or origin, *e. g.*:

Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, Piso, an Aquitanian, born of most illustrious stock.

(a) Source, origin, and material are more often expressed in Caesar by the ablative with *ex*, *e. g.*:

soror ex mātre, a sister on the mother's side (half sister); transtra ex trabibus, ribs (of a vessel) made of heavy timbers.

II. Ablative of Price.

Rule XLII.—Definite cost, price, and value, involving a verb of sale, purchase, or value and a noun of value, are expressed by the ablative, *e. g.*:

vectigālia parvō pretiō redempta, revenues bought in at a low price; quae impensō parant pretiō, which they secure at a high price.

III. Ablative with *opus*.

Rule XLIII.—The noun *opus* is sometimes joined with forms of *sum* as a compound verb phrase signifying *there is need of*, and taking a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing needed. The thing needed, if a neuter pronoun, is sometimes the subject; and if the need is for an action, it is expressed by the ablative of the perfect participle, *e. g.*:

quid mihi vitā opus est? what need have I of life? sī quid ipsī opus esset, if he needed anything; sī quid opus factō esset, if anything needed to be done.

IV. Ablative with Adjectives.

Rule XLIV.—The adjectives *dignus*, *worthy of*; *indignus*, *unworthy of*; *contentus*, *satisfied with*; *frētus*, *relying on*, govern the ablative, *e. g.*:

dignum memoriā visum est, it seemed worthy of memory; superiōribus victōriis frētī, relying on former victories.

LESSON LX.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

Syntax of the Participle; the Ablative Absolute.

367. Participles are both adjectives and verbs (218, a), hence they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case (80), and at the same time add some information concerning them. As verbs, the tenses of the participle denote time present, past, or future to the time of the principal verb.

368. All participial constructions may be regarded as abbreviations of clauses; e. g., *a routed army* is an army which has been routed; *surrounded, they cut their way out* is equivalent to *though they had been surrounded, they cut their way out*; *this said, he went away* is equivalent to *when he had said this, he went away*, etc.

369. Classes of Participial Constructions.—Participial constructions divide naturally into two classes:

I. Where the participle refers to a noun in the main structure of the sentence or clause in which it occurs. Such participles agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they refer, and are equivalent (a) to a subordinate clause of which this noun is the subject, or (b) to a co-ordinate clause where participle and verb replace two verbs joined by *and*; e. g.,

(a) Helvētīi, omnium rērum inōpiā adductī, lēgātōs mīserunt, *the Helvetii, influenced by lack of everything, sent envoys*; Atrebatēs trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī sunt, *they fell upon the Atrebates as they were trying to cross*.

(b) eōs circumventōs interficiunt, *these they surround and kill* (lit., *they kill these surrounded*).

II. Where the participle refers to a noun not in the main structure of the sentence or clause. Such participles and the noun to which they refer agree with each other in the **ablative case**; the phrase thus formed is wholly independent of the main structure of the sentence; that is, exists absolutely. The construction is called the **ablative absolute** and is to be translated by a dependent clause. The construction is most important and of frequent occurrence, chiefly owing to the lack of a perfect active participle in Latin.

Rule XLV.—Ablative Absolute.—A noun and participle may stand together in the ablative, as an abbreviation of a clause of time, cause, condition, concession, manner, and attendant circumstance; *e. g.*,

captō monte, Boiī nostrōs aggressī sunt, when they had seized the mountain, the Boiī attacked our men.

(a) In translating this construction, select that clause or phrase which gives the best and clearest English statement of the idea it contains: clauses introduced, for instance, by *when, as, since, if, though*; or phrases with *during, after, by*. Various forms of translation are possible and equally correct; but avoid English passive participial phrases, which are always awkward. The last example may be read: *when they had seized the mountain, or when the mountain had been seized, or after seizing the mountain, or seizing the mountain, or having seized the mountain*—but never, *the mountain having been seized*. This example also illustrates how the lack of a perfect active participle compels the use of the ablative absolute: had there been an active participle meaning *having seized*, it would simply have agreed with *Boiī* and had *mountain* for an object, as is so frequent in English.

(b) Where the participle required would be a present participle of **sum**, which does not exist, two nouns or a noun and adjective may stand in the ablative absolute, one of the

words in each case being the predicate after the missing participle, *e. g.*,

Messalā et Pisōne cōsulibus, *When Messala and Piso were consuls or in the consulship of M. and P., lit., M. and P. (being) consuls.*

370.

VOCABULARY.

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw away.	dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, conduct.
adhibeō, -ēre, uī, -itum, admit.	ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw out; sē ēicere, rush out.
adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be present.	hiems, hiemis, f., winter.
aestās, -tātis, f., summer.	ineō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, enter; begin.
animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -versum, perceive; punish (lit., turn the mind to).	nēgō, I, deny; refuse.
centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion.	ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., ORATION, speech.
clāmor, -ōris, m., CLAMOR, shouting.	revocō, I, call back, recall.
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, CONCEDE, grant.	ulterior, -ius, adj., comp. from ultrā, farther.
cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -ptum, enlist.	ultrō, adv., voluntarily.
	vehementer, adv., vigorously, VEHEMENTLY.

371. 1. Id oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, propter lātitudinem fossae et mūrī altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus,¹ expugnāre nōn potuit. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā,² omnēs quī aderant auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. 3. Locō castrīs idōneō dēlectō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. 4. Petentibus Haeduīs³ concessit ut in finibus suis Bōiōs collocārent. 5. Id quod anteā ei⁴ petentī nēgāverat, ultrō pollicēbātur. 6. Hīs litterīs commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte in ulteriōrem Galliam dēduxit. 7. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs accūsāvit. 8. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimī sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī invident;⁵ ā quibus nōs dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn poterimus. 9. Eā hieme quae secūta est, Pompēiō et Crassō cōsulibus,

Germānī flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt. 10. Germānī, clāmōre audītō, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs, sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt.

¹ Abl. Abs., here, concessive, *though few defended it.* ² With speech *habeō* means *deliver.* ³ Dat.; *to the H. asking (it), he granted that they might, etc.* ⁴ Ind. obj. of *nēgāverat.* ⁵ *invidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, envy.*

372. Every sentence in this exercise must contain at least one ablative absolute.

1. When the new legions had been enlisted, he hastened with them into farther Gaul. 2. Abandoning the camp, they fled across the river. 3. While Caesar was consul he resolved to make war upon the Gauls the next year. 4. After Caesar had delivered this speech, the Germans, hearing a clamor among their soldiers, feared an attack. 5. Though a long march was made with great speed, the troops of the enemy had already captured the town. 6. If our arms are given up, our enemies will make war upon us.



Andābatae, gladiators who fought blindfold on horseback.

LESSON LXI.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS. CORRELATION.

Remark.—In this lesson are grouped, for convenience of review, certain principles previously stated less formally.

373. An adjective or adjective pronoun agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, *e. g.*:

mīles ācer, a keen soldier; *ōrātiō ācris*, a sharp speech; *proelium acre*, a severe battle.

(a) A predicate adjective agreeing with two or more nouns of different genders is neuter if the nouns do not denote living beings; or the adjective may sometimes agree with the noun nearest to it and be understood with the others.

(b) Adjectives are often used substantively in the plural, *e. g.*:

nostri, our men; *sua*, their property; *omnia*, all things.

374. Syntax of Adjectives of Position.

Expressions denoting top of, bottom of, middle of, extreme or end of, always employ adjectives in agreement instead of a noun and a partitive genitive: the adjectives thus used are summus, īmus, medius, extrēmus, *e. g.*:

summam montem ā Labiēnō tenēri iussit, he ordered the top of the mountain to be held by Labienus; in colle mediō aciem instrūxit, he drew up the battle line half way up the hill. (See 166.)

375. Syntax of Pronouns.

I. Personal pronouns as subjects of verbs are not expressed except to secure clearness, contrast, or emphasis, *e. g.*:

ego certē meum officium praestiterō, I surely will have done my duty.

II. Possessive pronouns are usually not expressed except to secure clearness, contrast, or emphasis, *e. g.*:

gladii dēstricti, *drawing (their) swords*. For an emphatic possessive, see *meum* in 375, I.

III. The genitives nostrī, vestrī, of the personal pronouns, are used only as objective genitives, and nostrum, vestrum, as partitives: for subjective uses the possessive pronoun is employed, *e. g.*:

Eburōnēs tanta contemptiōne nostrī ad castra vēnērunt, *the Eburōnēs came to the camp in great contempt of us*; *omnium vestrum cōsēnsū*, *by the consent of all of you*.

IV. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends on its relation to the clause in which it stands, *e. g.*:

exercitūi quem cōscripserat, praeerat, *he was in command of the army which he had raised*.

376. **Correlation.**—Groups of words presenting the same idea in different relations are called correlatives. Thus, the *size* or *quantity* idea may be presented—demonstratively, *tantus*, *so great*; relatively, *quantus*, *as great as*; interrogatively, *quantus?* *how great?* indefinitely, *aliquantus*, *rather great*; and as a relative indefinite, *quantuscumque*, *however great*. The principle of correlation is of special importance in Latin in comparing like with like, *e. g.*:

My house is as large as yours, where the English introduces the second member simply by *as*, requires in Latin a size correlative in both members, *my house is so-large, as-large-as yours*.

As after a demonstrative adjective or adverb must always be expressed by a relative word of kindred meaning, *e. g.*:

parvā manū missā, quae tantum progredērētur quantum nāvēs processissent, *sending a small party which was to march as far as the ships had gone*.

377.

VOCABULARY.

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *opposite*.collis, -is, m., *hill*.cursus, -ūs, m., *speed, running*.gravis, -e, adj., *severe*, GRAVE.infimus, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of*
inferus, *lowest, bottom of*.lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *kill*.oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *siege*.prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *advance*.quantō, abl., *by how much; as; with*
comp., *often simply the*.quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great,*
as great.tantō, abl., *by so much*.tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great*.

Idiom.

primā lūce, *at dawn*.

378. 1. Quantō¹ gravior erat in diēs² oppugnātiō, tantō¹ crēbriōrēs litterae nuntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur. 2. Parva manus³ tantum⁴ prōgrediēbātur quantum nāvēs prōcesserant. 3. Eōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuerunt, complūrēs ex iis occiderunt. 4. Collis tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum loci aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat. 5. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille passibus aberat. 6. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem instrūxit. 7. Ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō. 8. Cohortēs sub infimō colle ab⁵ dextrō latere hostium cōstituerat.

¹ Lit., *By how much more severe; render simply, the more severe; so in second clause, the more frequent*. ² In diēs, *daily; used of daily increase or decrease: simple daily occurrence is expressed by cotīdiē*. ³ The small band. ⁴ so far; lit., *so much (of space)*: loci is to be understood as in sentence 4. ⁵ Often used of position, *on the side of; here, on the right flank*.

379. 1. Caesar fought with the Germans in the middle of the forest. 2. At the foot of the hill the commander located his baggage and left a guard of two cohorts. 3. That day he advanced as far as he was able. 4. The more fiercely an army fights, the more soldiers are killed. 5. He located his camp on the top of the hill. 6. I hold the power over all of you.

LESSON LXII.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

In this lesson are grouped for convenient reference certain principles previously treated, as well as a few others rare in narrative Latin, but important for the proper understanding of constructions often used by Caesar, especially clauses in indirect discourse.

380. Commands and Prohibitions.

I. The imperative is used in commands, entreaties, and laws, *e. g.*:

Dēsilitē, commilitōnēs, leap down, fellow soldiers.

II. A mild command, especially in the third person, may be expressed by the present subjunctive, *e. g.*:

reminiscātur, let him remember.

(a) This use of the subjunctive is called the **jussive subjunctive**.

III. The imperative is not used negatively in prose, but prohibitions are expressed (a) by *nē* with the perfect subjunctive or (b) by *nōlī* (*nōlite*), the imperative of *nōlō*, governing an infinitive, *e. g.*:

nē nōs dēspexerīs, do not despise us; nōlī committere ut is locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiat, do not act so that this place shall take its name from a disaster to the Roman people; nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, do not rob these of your aid.

381. Negatives.—There are two simple negative words, *nōn* and *nē*, *not*. Of these, *nōn* negatives assertions and questions only; *nē* negatives all other constructions.

QUESTIONS.

382. Questions may be **single** or **double**.

I. For single questions review 194.

II. Double questions admit several forms. They employ two interrogative words, of which the first is untranslatable and often

omitted and the second is equivalent to *or*. The forms are indicated in the following table:

utrum . . . , an . . .	— . . . , an . . .
-ne . . . , an . . .	— . . . , -ne . . .

(a) *or not*, as the second member of a double question, is **necne**.

383. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

I. Hortatory, expressing exhortation, *e. g.*:

omnem Galliam respiciāmus, *let us regard the whole of Gaul*.

II. Jussive, expressing mild command, *e. g.*:

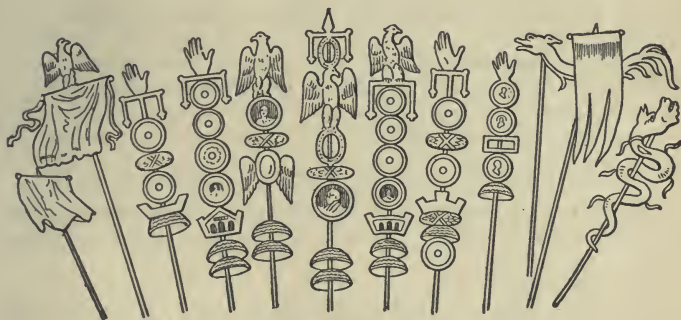
reminiscātur, *let him remember*.

III. Optative or Volitive, expressing wish, often accompanied by the wish-particle **utinam**, *O that, would that*, *e. g.*:

utinam hic esset, *would that he were here*.

IV. Potential, expressing possibility, *e. g.*:

quaerat quispiam, *some one may ask*.



Roman standards.

LESSON LXIII.

SYNTAX OF THE INFINITIVE.

384. The Infinitive is used with and without a Subject.

I. Infinitive without Subject.

Used without a subject, the infinitive may be:

(a) The **subject** of **est** and various impersonals, *e. g.:*

perfacile est cōnāta perficere, *to accomplish their attempts is very easy*;
rogant ut id sibi facere liceat, *they ask that it be allowed them to do this*.
Review 304, Remark.

(b) The **complement**, completing the meaning of another verb, and often becoming a real object, *e. g.:*

id facere possum, *I am able to do this*; id facere volō, *I wish to do this*.

This is called the **Complementary Infinitive**.

II. Infinitive with Subject.

The subject of the infinitive stands in the accusative, *e. g.:*

Germānōs assuēscere Rhēnum trānsire periculōsum est, *for the Germans to form the habit of crossing the Rhine is dangerous*.

The infinitive with subject may be:

(a) The **subject** of **est** and various impersonals, *e. g.:*

Poenam sequi oportēbat, *it was necessary that punishment should follow*.

(b) The **object**:

(1) After iubeō, *order*; vetō, *forbid*; cōgō, *compel*; patior, *permit*, *e. g.:*

Labiēnum montem ascendere iussit, *he ordered Labienus to climb the mountain*; lēgātōs discēdere vetuerat, *he had forbidden his officers to leave*.

(2) After verbs of **saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving**. This is the regular construction of indirect discourse, for the English particle of quotation, *that*, has no equivalent in Latin. This construction will be treated in full later, *e. g.*:

eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dicit, he says (that) the Gauls possess this part.

(c) Historical Infinitive.

The infinitive with subject in the nominative may be used in narrative as a substitute for the imperfect tense, *e. g.*:

diem ex diē Haedui dūcere, day after day the Haedui put him off.

This is merely a peculiarity of style, to secure vividness of narration.

385.

VOCABULARY.

āmentia, -ae, f., *folly, madness.*

perfacilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

commodus, -a, -um, adj., *advantageous.*

permaneō, -ere, -mānsī, -sum, *remain.*

paulātim, adv., *gradually.*

vērō, adv., *indeed, in truth.*

386. 1. *Exspectāre vērō summae āmentiae¹ est.* 2. *Perfacile factū² est cōnātā³ perficere.* 3. *Nōbīs est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere.* 4. *Germānōs⁴ paulātim cōsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire populō Rōmānō periculōsum⁵ est.* 5. *Commodissimum vīsum est ad eum mittere Valerium Procillum.* 6. *Nihil Sēquanī respondēre sed tacitī⁶ permanēre.* 7. *Mōribus suis Orgetorigem causam dicere coegērunt.* 8. *Hīs rēbus adductī, cōstituērunt cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.*

¹ 339, I; (*an act of*) *the utmost folly.* ² Supine limiting *perfacile*, *very easy to do.* ³ *Cōnātum*, -ī, n., *attempt.* ⁴ Subj. of *cōsuēscere*, with which *periculōsum* agrees: *trānsire* is complementary to *cōsuēscere*.

⁵ *Periculōsus*, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous.* ⁶ *Tacitus*, -a, -um, adj., *silent.*

387. 1. *I cannot wait longer, for to remain here is dangerous to the army.* 2. *Caesar ordered Labienus to establish peace with the Belgae.* 3. *In accordance with the customs of the Roman people, Caesar ordered the Germans to give him hostages.* 4. *I was compelled to remain three days in the city.* 5. *They compelled Caesar to remain three days in Rome.* 6. *To remain at home in war is the utmost folly.*

LESSON LXIV.

SYNTAX OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, AND OF THE SUPINE.

388. The Gerund.

The gerund has the uses both of noun and verb.

(a) It may be governed as a noun, *e. g.*:

cōsistendī potestās, *a chance of standing*; diem ad dēliberandum sūmam, *I shall take a day for reflecting*.

(b) It may govern an object, usually a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely a noun. A gerund, however, governed by a preposition cannot itself take an object, *e. g.*:

aliquid discendī causā, *for the sake of learning something*.

389. The Gerundive.

The gerundive participle is a verbal adjective. It is used:

(a) To form the second periphrastic, 274, b, 2.

(b) As a substitute for the gerund.

For the gerund governing a noun, the gerundive agreeing with the noun is commonly substituted; after prepositions, always, *e. g.*:

quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, *which tend toward weakening the character*; nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret, *not to lose time for fighting in looking for his own*; datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, *if granted the opportunity of making a march through the province*.

(c) There is no difference in meaning between the gerund and gerundive constructions. They even occur side by side, *e. g.*:

largē partiendō praedam stipendiōque praeteritō cum fidē exsolvendō, *by lavishly sharing the plunder and faithfully discharging arrears of pay*. Livy xxi, 5.

390. The cases of the gerund and gerundive are used as follows:

(a) **Genitive:** governed chiefly by nouns, by adjectives requiring a complement, and by *causā* and *gratiā*, *e. g.*:

cōsistendī potestās, a chance of standing; *cupidus bellandī*, eager for warfare; *frūmentandī causā*, for the purpose of foraging.

(b) **Dative:** rare; not found in Caesar.

(c) **Accusative:** chiefly with *ad* in constructions of purpose or tendency, *e. g.*:

quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, which tend to weaken the character.

(d) **Ablative:** to express cause, manner, means, and with prepositions, chiefly *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*, *e. g.*:

occupātī in castrīs mūniendīs, busy fortifying the camp.

391. The Supine.

(a) The supine in *-um* may be used after a verb of motion to express purpose, *e. g.*:

veniēbant questum, they came to complain.

(b) The supine in *-ū* is used after adjectives meaning easy, good, strange, and their contraries, *e. g.*:

perfacile factū est, it is very easy to do.

392.

VOCABULARY.

cāsus, *-ūs*, *m.*, chance, accident.

dīmīttō, *-ere*, *-mīsī*, *-missum*,

DISMISS; let go, lose.

subeō, *-īre*, *-īvī* (*-īī*), *-itum*, *undergo*.

sūmō, *-ere*, *sumpsī*, *sumptum*, take, ASSUME.

393. 1. Quam in partem quisque ab opere cāsū vēnit, quaeque¹ prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret. 2. Ab illīs initium trānseundī factum est. 3. Hostēs, ubi et dē expug-

nandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spēs sibi discessit, domum revertērunt. 4. Parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda erant. 5. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendī causā faciō. 6. Diem ego ad dēliberandum sūmam. Sī quid vultis, revertiminī. 7. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātis, ad Caesarem gratulātum² convenērunt. 8. Optimum factū est frūmentō commeātūque Rōmānōs prohibēre.

¹ The rel. pron. and -que. ² Supine. gratulor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., CONGRATULATE.

394. 1. The place is suitable for pitching camp. 2. When this speech had been delivered, all were prepared for fighting the battle. 3. The best (thing) to do is to return home. 4. The Belgians made a beginning of attacking our army. 5. All the Belgians came together to make war on the Romans. 6. Caesar has lost much time in seeking the tenth legion.



Masks worn by actors.

LESSON LXV.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

395. Dependent Clauses may be:

I. **Pure**; *i. e.*, adverbial clauses, neither subject nor object of the principal verb, nor in any way necessary to complete its sense, *e. g.*:

I came to see you.

II. **Substantive**; *i. e.*, clauses which serve as subject or object of the principal verb, or are in some way necessary to complete its sense, *e. g.*:

I wish that you would come: here the clause is the object of *wish*.

396. Dependent clauses are controlled by their principal clauses in respect to **mode** and **tense**. The control of the mode depends on the nature of the clause: for the tense control, review 235, the **Law of Sequence**.

397. Tenses in Purpose Clauses.—Only tenses built on the present stem are used in purpose clauses; *i. e.*, the **present** and **imperfect**.

398. Negatives in Purpose Clauses.—No negative word except **nē** can be used in purpose clauses, *e. g.*:

nēmō means *nobody*; but we cannot say *in order that nobody may go*, but must change it to *in order that not anybody may go*, **nē quis eat**.

CLASSIFICATION OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

399. Clauses of Purpose.

Purpose may be expressed by: (Review 234.)

I. A subjunctive clause introduced by ut, if positive; by nē, if negative.

1. **Pure**, having no grammatical dependence on the principal verb, *e. g.*:

sēmentēs quam māximās fēcērunt, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, they made their planting as extensive as possible, that a supply of grain might be on hand; *obsidēs inter sē dant: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant*; *Helvētiī, ut sine iniuriā trāseant*, they give hostages to each other: the Sequani, that they should not prevent the Helvetii from the march; the Helvetii, that they should cross without injury.

2. **Substantive**, the subject or object of the principal verb whose purpose they also express. They occur after verbs signifying advise, demand, order, permit, persuade, request, resolve, urge, warn, will, wish, etc., or, in general, after any verb which puts another verb into action.

(a) But *iubeō*, *vetō*, *cōgō*, *patior*, take the infinitive (384, II, b, 1), and *imperō*, *command*, takes the dative of the person and a clause with *ut*, *e. g.*:

civitatī persuāsit ut cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent, he persuaded the citizens to go forth with all their troops; here *ut . . . exīrent* is the object of *persuāsit*. *Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem Caesar addūceret*, Ariovistus demanded that Caesar bring no infantry; here *nē . . . addūceret* is the object of *postulāvit*. *Erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret*, orders had been given him not to join battle; here *nē . . . committeret* is the subject of *praeceptum erat*. *Helvētiōs reverti iussit, et Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmentī cōpiam faceret*, he ordered the Helvetii to return, and commanded the Allobroges to furnish them a supply of grain.

3. **Comparative**.—If the purpose clause contains a comparative of either an adjective or an adverb, *quō* is substituted for *ut*, *e. g.*:

Castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre possit, he fortifies a chain of forts that he may the more easily be able to check them.

II. A subjunctive clause introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb. Such clauses are used chiefly when the antecedent of the relative is the subject or object of the principal clause, *e. g.*:

lēgātōs misērunt quī dicerent, they sent envoys to say.

400.

VOCABULARY.

arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.cohortor, I, dep., *encourage*.cōservō, I, *preserve*.diligenter, adv., *carefully*, DILIGENTLY.famēs, -is, FAMINE, *hunger*.hortor, I, dep., EXHORT, *urge*.praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *order, instruct*.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., SUSPICION.

tolerō, I, *bear, support*.

401. 1. Dumnorīgem monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet. 2. Labiēnō erat ā Caesare praecceptum, nē proelium committeret. 3. Huic imperat ut quās possit¹ adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur.² 4. Nervī, quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent, mūnitiōnes ex arboribus fēcērunt. 5. Reliquōs cohortātus, militēs signa inferre iussit quō facilius gladiīs utī possent. 6. Quae prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē pugnandī tempus dīmitteret. 7. Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferret. 8. Omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. 9. Domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent. 10. Quōs diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs utī iussit et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suosque prohibērent.

¹ When a relative clause lies within another clause whose verb is subjunctive, its own verb frequently becomes subjunctive: it is then said to be in the subjunctive by *attraction*. ² One purpose clause may readily depend on another.

402. 1. The commander fortified his winter-quarters, the more easily to withstand the attacks of the enemy. 2. Caesar sent forward all the cavalry to seek a place suitable for a camp. 3. The Haedui send envoys to ask him not to advance farther. 4. The chiefs of the Gauls ordered¹ their people to permit no wine to be imported. 5. I shall put you in command of three legions, with which to keep the enemy from injury. 6. The lieutenant demanded that the Haedui give no grain to the Helvetii.

¹ Translate two ways, using *imperō* and *iubeō*.

LESSON LXVI.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

Clauses of Purpose (Continued).

403. (Continuing 399.)

III. Constructions of the Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Accusative of the gerundive alone after cūrō and dō,
e. g.:

pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat, he arranges for building a bridge over the Arar; ūnam legiōnem in Morinōs dūcendam Fabiō dedit, he gave one legion to Fabius to be led among the Morini.

2. Accusative with *ad*, e. g.:

ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur, *to carry out these plans*
Orgetorix is chosen.

3. Genitive with causā, e. g.:

aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant, they had gone forward to seek (material for) an earthwork.

IV. The supine in -um may be used after a verb of motion to express purpose, *e. g.*:

Haedui veniēbant questum, *the Haedui came to complain.*

404.

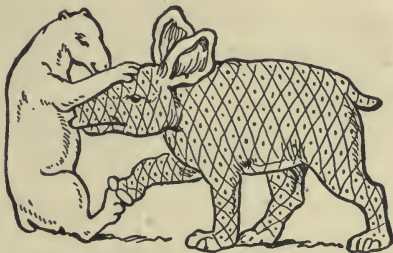
VOCABULARY.

cūrō, I, *care for, attend to; have*
(a thing) *done.* **profugiō**, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum,
flee for safety.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj., *unjust*; rogō, I, *ask*; *request*.
unfavorable.

405. 1. Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. 2. Reliquum exercitum lēgātīs in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit. 3. Quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trāduxistī, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāvistī, in tē aut ipse animadvertam aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēbō. 4. Nostrī in locum inīquiōrem pugnandī causā prōgredi nōlēbant. 5. Haeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vērunt. 7. Ariovistus cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Veson-tiōnem contendit. 8. Ob eam rem ex cīvitatē prōfūgī et Rōmam ad senātum vērī auxilium postulātum.

406. 1. Caesar came from Rome to conquer the Gauls. 2. For fortifying the town the commander chose Labienus. 3. I shall give you a legion to be led to Ocelum. 4. Caesar had an earthwork built in front of the camp. 5. The army set out from camp for the purpose of seeking the enemy. 6. He hastened with all his troops to besiege the city.



Fight between bear and rhinoceros.

LESSON LXVII.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

407. Clauses of Result.

Result may be expressed by: (Review 240.)

I. A subjunctive clause introduced by ut, if positive; by ut nōn, if negative.

1. Pure, usually preceded by *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *tantus*, *tālis*, *tantopere*, etc., in the principal clause, *e. g.*:

ita currūs collocant, ut expeditū receptum habeant, *they so place their chariots that they have an easy retreat*; tantus timor exercitū occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs perturbāret, *so great fear seized the army that it disturbed the minds of all not a little*.

2. Substantive, the subject or object of the principal verb, whose result they also express. They occur after verbs signifying *bring about*, *cause*, *happen*, etc., *e. g.*:

ut commeātus ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat, (*this fact*) *brought it about that supplies could be transported*; his rebus fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, *for these reasons it chanced that they roamed less widely*.

II. A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive.

408. **Negatives.**—In result clauses all negative words are admitted after ut. The following table illustrates the difference of negative idiom in purpose and result clauses.

	Purpose.	Result.
<i>That . . . not,</i>	<i>nē</i>	<i>ut nōn</i>
<i>That no one,</i>	<i>nē quis</i> }	<i>ut nēmō</i> }
	<i>nē ullus</i> }	<i>ut nullus</i> }
<i>That never,</i>	<i>nē quandō</i> }	<i>ut numquam</i>
	<i>nē umquam</i> }	

409.

VOCABULARY.

condōnō, I, *overlook, forgive.*contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum,
*touch; happen.*cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily.*dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.*dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, discontent.*enim, conj., *for: cannot begin a*
*clause.*exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., EXERCISE;
*practice.*factum, -ī, n., *deed, FACT.*facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity;*
*supply.*instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *set up;*
INSTITUTE; *appoint; train.*intermitto, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
*interrupt; cease.*mereor, -ērē, -itus, dep., MERIT,
*deserve.*modus, -ī, m., *measure; manner;*
*kind; eius modī, of such a kind.*nāscor, -ī, nātus, dep., *be born;*
arise.

necessariō, adv., NECESSARILY.

rādīx, -icis, f., *root; base (of a*
*mountain).*rēs publica, gen., rei publicae, f.,
*the State, the REPUBLIC.*superior, -ius, adj., *higher; former.*tempestās, -tātis, f., *weather; storm.*

410. 1. Ita Helvētīi ā māiōribus institūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuerint. 2. Ita nōs omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus, ut oppida nostra expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. 3. Obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent, perficit. 4. Id oppidum nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur ut magnam facultātem ad dūcendum¹ bellum daret. 5. Quae iūmenta apud eōs sunt nāta, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne ut sint summī labōris² efficiunt. 6. Tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter³ omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 7. Reliquum spatium mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. 8. In cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius⁴ factum latēre⁵ posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur. 9. Tanti⁶ tua apud me grātia est, ut et rei publicae iniūriam et meum dolōrem tuae voluntātī condōnem. 10. Eius modī sunt tempestātēs consecūtae, ut opus necessariō intermitterētur.

¹ Dūcō here means *prolong*. ² these . . . they make (*capable*) of the hardest (lit., greatest) labor. ³ mediocriter, adv., *moderately; nōn m., not a little*. ⁴ A little extra-brave. ⁵ Lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *escape notice, be hidden*. ⁶ Of such value; 339, V.

411. 1. This attack of the Romans brought-it-about¹ that the Gauls immediately fled. 2. So great fear seized Orgetorix that he begged of² Caesar not to kill him. 3. It happened that that night the enemy made an attack upon the camp. 4. Ariovistus was so skilled in military matters that he was able to draw up a battle-line. 5. For these reasons it happened that the citizens permitted no wine to be imported. 6. The tower was of so great size that it could be seen from the town.

¹ efficiō.

² Ā Caesare peteret.



Pack horse and camel.

LESSON LXVIII.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

412. Appositive Clauses of Explanation.

A substantive clause often stands in apposition to a noun or pronoun. Such clauses may be introduced by:

1. Quod, *that, the fact that*, with the verb in the indicative, *e. g.*:

multae rēs ad hōc Gallōs hortābantur; inōpia cibāriōrum, et quod ferē libenter hominēs ea, quae volunt, crēdunt, *many things urged the Gauls to this; the scarcity of food, and the fact that men generally gladly believe what they desire.*

2. Ut (neg. ut nōn), *that (that . . . not)*, with the verb in the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur, *the penalty was to overtake him that he be burned (alive).*

413. Substantive Clauses after verbs of Doubt, Hindrance, Prevention, and Refusal.

1. Quīn with the subjunctive follows negative verbs and phrases of doubt, *e. g.*:

nōn est dubium quīn plūrimum Helvētīi possint, *there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful.*

2. Nē, quōminus and, after negatives, quīn with the subjunctive are used after verbs of hindrance, refusal and prevention, *e. g.*:

multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant, *they prevent the populace from giving grain; nāvēs tenēbantur quōminus in portum venire possent*, *the ships were prevented from being able to reach port; neque recūsābunt quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō sint*, *nor will they refuse to be perpetually under their sway; Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant quīn tēla conicerent*, *it had not been possible to restrain the Germans from throwing spears.*

414. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fear.

1. A fear that something will happen is expressed by nē with the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

niam, nē Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur, for he feared that he would wound the feelings of Diviciacus.

2. A fear that something will not happen is expressed by ut with the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

sed verēbāntur ut supportāri posset, but they feared that it could not be furnished.

(a) This use of ut and nē apparently reverses their regular meanings. It came about thus: if you *fear* that something *will* happen, there is always an earnest *wish* that it *may not* happen, and the nē represents this strong *negative wish*, *e. g.*:

I fear it will happen = I am afraid: Oh, may it not happen! In like manner a negative fear is accompanied by a strong positive wish; hence, ut.

415.

VOCABULARY.

commodē, adv., *easily, conveniently.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *prevent,*

DETER.

discessus, -ūs, m., *departure.*

fortūna, -ae, f., FORTUNE.

pācō, I, *subdue, pacify.*

recēns, -ntis, adj., RECENT.

supplicium, -ī (-iī), n., *punishment.*

supportō, I, *bring up; transport.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

Idiom.

supplicium sumere dē, *to inflict punishment on.*

416. 1. Nōn dubitāmus quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint,¹ Ariovistus gravissimum supplicium sūmat. 2. Caesar vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs,² vel recentī victōriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī, dēterrere potest nē māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur. 3. Nisi³ sī quid in Caesare est auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcērunt, ut domō exeant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat,¹ experiantur. 4. Hī multitudinē dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant.¹

5. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn erat quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur.
 6. Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quominus in eundem portum venīre possent. 7. Coniūrāndī hae sunt causae: primum quod verentur nē, omnī Galliā pācātā, ad eos exercitus noster addūcātur. 8. Nōn hostem verēmur, sed angustīās itineris; aut rem frūmentāriam ut satis commodē supportārī posset. 9. Eā dē causā ā meis dīscēdere atque ad tē venīre nōluī, quō facilius cīvitatē in officiō continērem; nē, omnis nōbilitātis discessū, plebs dēficeret. 10. Treverī vērō tōtīus hiemis nullum tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent.

¹ Subjunctive by attraction; 401, note 1. ² *By his own reputation and (that) of his army.* ³ *Nisi* is sometimes accompanied by *sī*, especially before the indefinite pronoun *quis*.

417. 1. He cannot prevent the Germans from crossing the river in boats. 2. I fear the Romans will come with an army to seize our towns. 3. I cannot keep myself from fearing that the enemy will take the city. 4. They feared that they would not be able to conquer the Germans. 5. Caesar ordered¹ Labienus to prevent the Germans from crossing the river. 6. I cannot restrain² my soldiers from throwing weapons at³ the enemy.

¹ Write twice, using *iubeō* and *imperō*. ² *Retineō*. ³ *In* with acc.



Circus rider, *désultor*.

LESSON LXIX.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

418. Temporal Clauses.

Temporal clauses express the time relation which the dependent clause bears to the principal clause.

I. **Temporal clauses** may be introduced by a subordinate conjunction of time relation, called a **temporal conjunction** or **temporal particle**.

1. **Dum**, *while*, governs the **present indicative**, *e. g.*:

dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, while these things were taking place, it was told to Caesar.

Quoad, *as long as*, governs the **indicative**, *e. g.*:

quoad potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could.

Dum and **quoad**, *until*, govern the **subjunctive**, *e. g.*:

nōn expectandum sibi statuit dum in Santonōs Helvētīi pervēnīrent, he resolved that he must not wait until the Helvetii came among the Santoni.

2. **Postquam** and **posteaquam**, *after*; **ubi**, *when*; **simul ac** (*simul atque*), **cum primum** and **ubi primum**, *as soon as*, govern the **perfect indicative** of a single past event, *e. g.*:

eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, after Caesar arrived there.

3. **Antequam** (not in Caesar) and **priusquam**,¹ *before*, take the **subjunctive** to indicate *design, expectation, or fear*;

¹ **Antequam** and **priusquam** are often separated; **ante** or **prius** standing in the principal clause and **quam** introducing the dependent clause. This is called *tmēsis*, *a cutting*.

the indicative (rare) to indicate mere priority of time, *e. g.*:

Caesar priusquam sē hostēs reciperent, exercitum duxit, *Caesar before the enemy should recover, led the army.*

4. Cum, when.

(a) Cum, referring to **present or future time**, governs the **indicative**, *e. g.*:

hī, cum ūsus est, omnēs in bellō versantur, *these, when there is need, all engage in war.*

(b) Cum, referring to **past time**, governs the **indicative** to indicate the **point of time**, the **subjunctive** (imperfect and pluperfect) to emphasize the **circumstances accompanying the event**, *e. g.*:

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haeduī, *when Caesar came into Gaul, the Haeduī were leaders*; cum vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem incidit, *when he was being dragged along in chains, he fell in with Caesar himself.*

II. Temporal clauses may be expressed by participles, either in agreement or in the ablative absolute, *e. g.*:

Hōc factō, reliquās in aciē cōstituit, *when he had done this he stationed the rest in line.*

419.

VOCABULARY.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *ap-*
proach; be added.

nox, noctis, f., NIGHT.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *de-*
mand.

praefectus, -ī, m., *prefect* (an
officer of cavalry).

propius, comp. adv., used also as
prep., *nearer.*

resistō, -ere, -stiti (-stitum),
RESIST.

simul, adv., *at the same time.*

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *place;*
determine.

terror, -ōris, m., *TERROR, panic.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *small hill.*

420. 1. Caesar, priusquam hostēs sē ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Remīs erant,

exercitum dūxit. 2. Hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt. 3. Interim praefectōs iussit, quī cum omnī equitātū praemissī erant, sustinēre quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset. 4. Ipse, equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit. 5. Quibus rēbus adductus, Caesar sibi nōn exspectandum statuit, dum in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent. 6. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī¹ dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit. 7. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, equitēs Ariovistī propius² tumulum accēdunt et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs coniciunt. 8. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. 9. Reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. 10. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs poposcit.

¹ Pred. appos. to quī, *who had come as envoys*. ² Here used as prep. with acc.

421. 1. The Romans made an attack before the enemy were able to draw up their line of battle. 2. Caesar remained in Gaul with the army until the work of fortifying the winter quarters was finished. 3. While the soldiers were seeking plunder, the commander of the enemy fled. 4. After Caesar conquered the Gauls there was peace. 5. I shall hold out as long as I can. 6. When Caesar was about to set out into Italy, another attack was made upon him.

LESSON LXX.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

422.

Causal Clauses.

I. Causal clauses may be introduced by causal conjunctions.

1. **Cum**, *since, because*, governs the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, because the most certain facts were added to these suspicions, he thought there was sufficient cause.

2. **Quoniam**, *since, because*, governs the indicative, *e. g.*:

quoniam mē servāre nōn possum, since I cannot save myself.

3. **Quod**, *because*, (a) governs the indicative when stating the real reason, *e. g.*:

acciderat quod legiōnem dēspiciēbat, it had happened because they despised the legion.

(b) governs the subjunctive when the statement is made on another's authority or from another's point of view, *e. g.*:

eōs accūsāt quod ab iis nōn sublevētur, he blames them because he (as he claims) is not assisted by them.

II. The relative pronoun, alone or accompanied by **ut**, may be used with the subjunctive to express cause, *e. g.*:

Caesar iniūriam facit, quī vectigālīa dēteriōra faciat, Caesar does him a wrong, because he is diminishing his income.

III. Participles, either in agreement or in the ablative absolute, may express cause, *e. g.*:

superātis Belgīs, Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāvit, because the Belgians had been subdued, Caesar thought Gaul was pacified.

423. Concessive Clauses.

I. Concessive clauses may be introduced by concessive conjunctions.

1. *Cum*, *although*, governs the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

eā celeritāte milītēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent,
with such speed did the soldiers charge, though they were above water with
the head alone.

2. *Etsī*, *although*, governs the indicative, *e. g.*:

etsī mātūrae sunt hiemēs, although the winters are early.

II. The relative pronoun may be used with the subjunctive to express concession, *e. g.*:

Ille, quī iam ante inimicō animō in nōs fuisset, multō gravius exārsit,
though even before this he had been ill disposed toward us, he was much
more incensed.

III. Participles, either in agreement or in the ablative absolute, may express concession, *e. g.*:

id, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit, this, though few
defended it, he was unable to take.

424.

VOCABULARY.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., *forage*.

necessārius, -a, um, adj., *NECESSARY*.

prex, *precis*, f., usually pl., *entreaties, prayers*.

septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh*.

sublevō, I, *assist, relieve*.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be left, survive*.

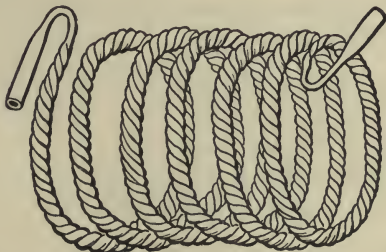
425. 1. *Hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum numerus erat quīnque milium cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris¹ quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt.*
2. *Eōdem fere tempore, etsī aestās prope iam exācta² erat,*

tamen, quod Morinī supererant, quī in armīs erant, eō exercitum addūxit. 3. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab horā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, fugientem hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. 4. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ego vōbīscum pācem faciam. 5. Nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum propter vulnera militum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. 6. Graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum frūmentum ex agrīs sūmī nōn posset, tam necessariō tempore, ab iis nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus,³ queritur.

¹ Abl. abs. ² *exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, finish, end* (of a period of time). ³ *Dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, desert.*

426. 1. Though the fight lasted¹ from the fourth hour to sunset, no one of the enemy fled. 2. The Germans are brave because they do not use wine. 3. Though the Germans fight bravely, nevertheless we can conquer them. 4. Though the battle would not be without danger to the army, he advanced bravely. 5. Ariovistus sent envoys to Caesar to complain because the Roman cavalry were demanding grain. 6. Since you are the enemy of Rome, I shall at once besiege your city.

¹ Say, "it was fought."



Roman military bracelet, of gold, awarded to soldiers for deeds of unusual bravery.

LESSON LXXI.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

427. Conditional Sentences.

Conditional sentences consist of two clauses: the **if** clause, called the **protasis**; and the conclusion clause, called the **apodosis**. The **protasis** is introduced by **sī, if**, or by **nisi, if . . . not, unless**. The **apodosis** is the principal clause of a conditional sentence.

428. Classification of Conditions.

(a) Conditional sentences are classified on the basis of time as **present and past conditions** and **future conditions**.

(b) Present and past conditions are further classified as **simple and contrary to fact**.

429. A. Present and Past Conditions.

I. Simple Conditions are stated with no indication as to the fulfilment of the protasis, and any present or past indicative tense may stand in both protasis and apodosis. The imperative may stand in apodosis, *e. g.*:

*sī valēs, laetor, if you are well, I am glad; sī epistulam meam ac-
cēpisti, certior factus es, if you received my letter, you have been informed;
sī quid vultis, revertimini, if you want anything, come back.*

I. Contrary to Fact Conditions indicate by their form that the supposition of the protasis is not or was not fulfilled. They may lie in present or past time.

1. **Present Contrary to Fact Conditions** have the imperfect subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis, *e. g.*:

*sī Caesar adesset, nōn in periculō essēmus, if Caesar were here, we
should not be in danger.*

2. Past Contrary to Fact Conditions have the pluperfect subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis, *e. g.*:

si Caesar adfuisset, nōn in periculō fuissēmus, if Caesar had been here, we should not have been in danger.

430.

VOCABULARY.

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., CONTEMPT.
ōrō, I, *entreat, pray.*

praestat, -āre, -stitit, *impers., it is better.*

quandō, adv., *when.*

431. 1. *Sī quid vultis, revertiminī.* 2. *Sī populus Rōmānus alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū¹ fuisset, nōn fuisset difficile cavēre.²* 3. *Sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre praestat.* 4. *Sī ille adesset, Ebūrōnēs tantā contemptiōne nostrī³ ad castra nōn vēnissent.* 5. *Nisi haec ita essent, Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgētī cōnsilium nōn cēpissent.* 6. *Vincite,⁴ sī ita vultis.* 7. *Sī Aduātucōs cōservāre statuistī, ōrāmus nē arma nōbīs ēripiās.* 8. *Ac sī quandō⁵ suis fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.*

¹ cōnsciū, -a, -um, adj., CONSCIOUS. ² caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard.* ³ nostrī is gen. pl. of ego. ⁴ *Have your way; lit., conquer.* ⁵ *sī quandō, if ever.*

432. 1. If our soldiers had assaulted the town that day, they would have captured it. 2. If Caesar were in command of the army, we should now be on the march. 3. If a soldier is brave, he fights fiercely. 4. Labienus, if you wish anything, come back. 5. If this is so, I am your friend. 6. If this were so, I would be your friend.



Snake ring.

LESSON LXXII.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES (Continued).

433. Conditional Sentences (Continued).

B. Future Conditions.

Future Conditions are classified as **More Vivid** and **Less Vivid**; that is, the *shall* and *will* conditions and the *should* and *would* conditions.

I. **More Vivid Future Conditions** have the future indicative in both protasis and apodosis; but the future perfect indicative may stand in protasis representing an action to be completed before the apodosis can occur, *e. g.*:

sī hostēs venient, pugnābitur, if the enemy come, there will be a fight.

II. **Less Vivid Future Conditions** have the present subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis; but the perfect subjunctive may stand in protasis representing an action to be completed before the apodosis can occur, *e. g.*:

si hostēs veniant, pugnētur, if the enemy should come, there would be a fight.

Remarks.—1. To translate a condition properly, observe its *form* only. Mixed conditions may occur, having protasis and apodosis of different classes; translate each in the class to which its *form* shows it to belong.

2. Any protasis may be expressed by a participle, either agreeing with a noun in the apodosis or in the Ablative Absolute, *e. g.*:

sē dēfendere, trāditis armīs, nōn poterunt, they will not be able to defend themselves if they give up their arms.

434.

Table of Conditional Sentences.

Latin Conditions.	Present and Past Conditions.	Simple.—Present or past tense of the indicative in both protasis and apo- dosis; imperative allowed in apo- dosis.
		Contrary to Fact. { Present Time.—Imperfect subjunctive in both pro- tasis and apodosis. Past Time.—Pluperfect subjunctive in both pro- tasis and apodosis.
	Future Conditions.	More Vivid.—Future indicative in both protasis and apodosis: future perfect in protasis, if completed before apodosis takes place.
		Less Vivid.—Present subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis: perfect subjunctive in protasis, if completed before apodosis takes place.

435.

VOCABULARY.

furor, -ōris, FURY, rage, madness.

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, IM-
PEL, induce.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, aid, assist.

submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
send (aid).

436. 1. Hōc sī fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritās apud om-
nēs Belgās maxima erit. 2. Sī Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint,
unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem ēreptūrī sunt.
3. Nisi subsidium mihi submittētur, diūtius sustinēre nōn
poterō. 4. Quod¹ sī furōre impulsus bellum intulerit, quid
tandem² vereāminī? 5. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequētur,
tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō. 6. Sī quid accidat
Rōmānīs, ipse per Helvētiōs regnum obtineat. 7. Quod sī
quid meō frātrī ā Caesare gravius acciderit, cum ipse eum
locum amicitiae apud Caesarem teneam, nēmō³ existimābit
nōn meā voluntāte factum. 8. Sī hostēs frūmentō iūveritis,
vōs eōdem locō⁴ quō Helvētiōs habēbō.

¹ Quod sī, but if. ² Tandem in a question strengthens it; why pray?
why in the world? or some such idiom. ³ No one will think it not done
by my consent. ⁴ Figurative: I will hold you in the same place (i. e.,
class) as (I hold) the Helvetii; that is, regard you as enemies.

437. 1. If the Haedui give¹ us grain, we shall immediately set out against the Germans. 2. If you should ask grain, the Haedui would not give it. 3. If you do this, Caesar will hold you in the number of his enemies. 4. If you should conquer the Belgians, they would retreat to the forests. 5. If Ariovistus should be captured, he would be led by the soldiers to Caesar's camp. 6. If the army arrives within three days, the enemy will be easily overcome.

¹ Note that in English the vivid future condition uses the present tense in protasis



Shield commemorating the sack of Rome by the Gauls. It is probably spurious, though accepted by some authorities as genuine, and is shown merely as an interesting example of commemorative art in metal work.

LESSON LXXIII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

438. There are two ways of indicating what another says, thinks, knows, or perceives.

(a) **Direct Quotation**, *Ōrātiō recta*, where the exact words are quoted, and in which there are no peculiarities of construction.

(b) **Indirect Quotation**, *Ōrātiō oblīqua*, where the original statement is reported in the words of the second speaker.

In such clauses in English the verb of **saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving**, takes an object clause introduced usually by the quotation particle *that*, e. g.:

I will consider it becomes in indirect quotation *he says that he will consider it* or *he said that he would consider it*. The quotation-particle that has no equivalent in Latin, which, in order to quote indirectly, changes the mode of the verbs of the original statement.

439. Law of Indirect Discourse.

After verbs and expressions of saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving.

1. The verbs of all assertions in principal clauses become infinitive with subject accusative.

2. The verbs of most questions in principal clauses become subjunctive; but some become infinitive, especially if rhetorical.

3. The verbs of all commands in principal clauses become subjunctive.

4. The verbs of all dependent clauses become subjunctive.

5. All subjunctives in *Ōrātiō oblīqua* obey the Law of Sequence of Tenses and take sequence from the verb which introduces the quotation.

6. In all changes involving finite modes only, between direct and indirect discourse, the stem of the changed verb-forms never changes.

(Except in prohibitions of the form, 380, III, a.)

Examples.—In these examples the sentence is given first in *orātiō recta*, then in *orātiō obliqua* after a primary tense, the secondary tense and sequence being bracketed. The numbers refer to the divisions under 439.

1. (a) *Caesar says (said): "I will come."* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Veniam."

(b) *Caesar says (said) that he will (would) come.* Caesar dicit (dixit) sē ventūrum esse. As there are no dependent clauses in the quotation, the law of sequence does not apply here; it affects the finite modes alone.

(a) *Caesar says (said): "Labienus has come."* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Labiēnus vēnit."

(b) *Caesar says (said) that Labienus has (had) come.* Caesar dicit (dixit) Labiēnum vēnisse.

2. (a) *Caesar asks (asked): "What do you wish?"* Caesar rogat (rogāvit): "Quid vīs?"

(b) *Caesar asks (asked) what he wishes (wished).* Caesar rogat (rogāvit) quid velit (vellet).

(a) *Caesar says (said): "Can I lay aside the memory?"* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Num memoriam dēpōnere possum?"

(b) *Caesar says (said) can (could) he lay aside the memory?* Caesar dicit (dixit) num sē memoriam dēpōnere posse? This question is asked not for an answer, but for rhetorical effect.

3. (a) *Caesar says (said): "Remember."* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Reminescere."

(b) *Caesar says (said) he must remember.* Caesar dicit (dixit) reminiscātur (reminiscerētur).

4. (a) *Caesar says (said): "Labienus, who has conquered the Gauls, has come."* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Labiēnus, quī Gallōs vicit, vēnit."

(b) *Caesar says (said) that Labienus, who has (had) conquered the Gauls, has (had) come.* Caesar dicit (dixit) Labiēnum, quī Gallōs vicerit (viciisset), vēnisse.

(a) *Caesar says (said): "I come to wage war."* Caesar dicit (dixit): "Venīō ut bellum geram."

(b) *Caesar says (said) that he comes (came) to wage war.* Caesar dicit (dixit) sē ut bellum gerat (gereret) venīre.

440. Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse.

The tense of the infinitive in an indirect quotation is determined solely by the time of the original statement. Thus, if Caesar said *Labienus is my friend*, it will become *esse* whatever may be the tense of the verb of saying.

(a) The future infinitive of a verb which has no supine stem, or a future infinitive passive, is represented by **fore** (223, *d*) followed by a subject clause with **ut** and the subjunctive, *e. g.*:

fore vidēbat, ut periculum effugerent, he saw that they would flee the danger: *lit., he saw it would be that they, etc.*

441. VOCABULARY.

contumēlia, -ae, f., <i>insult, outrage.</i>	intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, <i>know, understand.</i>
deinde, adv., <i>next, then.</i>	mandātum, -ī, n., <i>command.</i>
dēmōnstrō, I, <i>show, point out.</i>	moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, <i>MOVE.</i>
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, <i>lay down, lay aside.</i>	putō, I, <i>think, consider.</i>
	suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, <i>undertake.</i>

442. 1. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum,¹ ut hominēs bellicosōs² finitimōs habēret. 2. Lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmp-tūrum: sī quid vellent, reverterentur. 3. Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: haec esse quae ab eō postu-laret; primum, nē quam hominum multitudinem amplius trāns Rhēnum trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet.³ 4. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī⁴ vellet, num etiam recen-tium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse? 5. Caesar dixit: Quod sī furōre impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? 6. Caesar dixit: Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset,⁵ statim factūrum; et proximā nocte castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor⁶ atque officium an timor plūs

valēret. 7. Allobrogēs sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et demōnstrant nihil sibi esse reliquī praeter agrī solum. 8. Sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putābat.

¹ Fut. inf. with **esse** omitted: **esse** is freely omitted from any compound infinitive; and the student is dependent upon the syntax, especially the principal verb, to determine whether the remaining portion of the form is an infinitive or a true participle. ² **Bellicōsus**, -a, -um, warlike. ³ The **ut** which would naturally govern **redderet** is omitted, being sufficiently indicated by the **nē** which governs the negative clause of the same construction. ⁴ **Obliviscor**, -ī, ōblītus, dep., forget, governs the genitive. ⁵ What he had intended to defer to a more distant day. ⁶ **Pudor**, -ōris, m., shame, sense of honor: whether a sense of honor and duty, or fear, were the stronger with them. Review 382.

443. Translate into Latin; first in the direct discourse, then in indirect discourse depending on *Caesar says*, then in indirect discourse depending on *Caesar said*.

1. I will conquer the Germans in a great war. 2. I am in great fear. 3. I have seen the enemy. 4. Where shall I obtain grain? 5. Can I endure the insults of Dīvicō? 6. Inquire where the army of the enemy is. 7. The Germans, who have sent me this message, are our enemies. 8. I shall make war on Ariovistus because he does injury to the province.



Types of Roman denarii (reverse). Those showing a two-horse chariot were called **nummī bīgātī**; those showing a four-horse chariot, **nummī quadrīgātī**.

LESSON LXXIV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued).

444. Indirect Questions.

The construction of the **indirect question** is extended beyond the quoting of an actual question to include statements **implying** or **anticipating questions**. Thus, *he asked what he should do* is the actual question, *what shall I do?* indirectly quoted. But in *Caesar told them what he would do*, there may have been no actual question; yet in giving this information Caesar anticipated and answered an implied question, *what will you do?* This implication requires that *what* should be an interrogative word in Latin, and the verb *do* in the subjunctive.

(a) As there is no future subjunctive, indirect questions referring to the future employ first periphrastic forms.

445. For reference only.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse.

(a) Protasis tenses are all in the subjunctive.

(b) All apodosis constructions involve an infinitive idiom, as follows (except that imperative apodoses become subjunctive):

1. An indicative verb becomes infinitive.

2. An active subjunctive becomes the future infinitive, except that in the past contrary to fact, the verb is expressed by a compound infinitive formed by joining **fuisse** to the future participle of the verb.

3. A passive subjunctive becomes **fore** (or **futūrum esse**) followed by a subject clause introduced by **ut** and having its verb in the subjunctive; except that in the past contrary to fact, **futūrum fuisse** is substituted in the place of **fore**.

446.

VOCABULARY.

arbitror, I, dep., *think, judge.*custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard.*fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, *FLOW.*insidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush; treach-
ery.*oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*ostendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum, *show.*perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,
*observe; see clearly.*quārē (often quā rē), adv. phrase
rel. and interrog., *wherefore, why.*sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

447. 1. Hāc rē statim per explorātōrēs cognitā, Caesar, insidiās veritus,¹ quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. 2. Intellegō quantō cum periculō id fēcerim. 3. Neque cōnsilī habendī² neque arma capiendī³ spatiō datō, perturbābantur cōpiāsne⁴ ad hostēs ēducere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. 4. Flūmen est Arar quod in Rhodanum influit incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicāre nōn possit. 5. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit. 6. Quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. 7. Satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē aut ipse in eum animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret. 8. Vehementer eōs accūsāvit; primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent.

¹ The pf. ptc. of a deponent may take a dir. obj. ² Gerundive.

³ Gerund with obj.; note the occurrence of the two constructions in the same clause: both are gen. depending on spatiō. ⁴ Nē . . . an . . . an; 382, II.

448. 1. I do not know why they are departing. 2. Caesar showed me what his plan was. 3. I do not know whether I shall go or stay. 4. Find out¹ what is the nature of the place that the enemy have chosen for a camp. 5. The tenth legion had never inquired by what plan it was being led. 6. But it always wished to know where the enemy was.

¹ Use cognōscō.

LESSON LXXV.

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

449. Mode Syntax of the Relative Sentence.

No relative word can exert any influence upon the mode of the verb of its clause: it merely represents its antecedent. Only an outside influence or a need within the clause can make the verb of a relative clause subjunctive.

Rule A.—When the relative clause states a fact concerning the antecedent, its verb is in the indicative.

Rule B.—When, however,

I. Another verb imposes its force upon the verb of the relative clause, or when,

II. The verb of the relative clause is governed by a subordinate conjunction which takes the subjunctive, or when,

III. The relative clause forms a part of a subjunctive condition, or when,

IV. The verb of the relative clause is compelled to express by itself some idea other than, or additional to, a fact, it stands in the subjunctive mode.

450. Remarks.—1. On 449, B, I. A verb may impose its force on a relative clause—

(a) By **indirect discourse**.

(b) By **attraction**. A relative clause included within another clause whose verb is subjunctive often has its own verb subjunctive for no apparent reason, *e. g.*:

dat negōtium Gallis utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnoscant, he charges the Gauls to find out those things which were going on among them.

2. On 449, B, IV. The necessities of expression laid upon the verb of a relative clause may be:

(a) Purpose (399, II);

(b) Result (407, II);

(c) Cause (422, II);

(d) Concession (423, II);

(e) Characteristic. Here the relative clause expresses some quality or characteristic of a general or indefinite antecedent (especially if negative or interrogative), or an action or state inferable from it, *e. g.*:

ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, things which (i. e., such things as) pertained to their departure; ūnus ego sum quī addūcī nōn potuerim, I am the only one who (owing to firmness of character) could not be induced; nōn longius aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, they were no farther away than a javelin could be hurled.

451.

VOCABULARY.

adhūc, adv., *hitherto*.

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, COL-

LECT.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -pletum,

fill, COMPLETE.

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *sur-*

render.

452. 1. *Accūsābant reliquōs Belgās quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent atque virtutem prōiēcissent.* 2. *Hīs rēbus cognitis, explōrātōrēs praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant.* 3. *Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent.* 4. *Hōc rē concessā, parvīs arbōribus collectīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,¹ ad castra contendunt.* 5. *Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit² quī nāvī ēgredi nōn audēret, ad Caesarem refertitur.* 6. *Neque adhūc repertus est quisquam quī mortem recūsāret.* 7. *Ūnus ego sum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut liberōs meōs obsidēs dem.* 8. *Ratiō confecta erat quī numerus domō exīssset eōrum quī arma ferre possent.*

¹ *Quibus . . . compleant, with which to fill up.* ² *So far as opportunity could be given to him; lit., as much of opportunity as.*

EXERCISES IN CONNECTED READING.

The Helvetian War.

These selections contain the somewhat simplified text of Caesar's account of his first campaign in Gaul in the early summer of 58 B. C. Caius Julius Caesar has left a greater impress on the world than any man that ever lived. It is safe to say that, but for Caesar, our own country would not be what it is to-day; for Caesar determined the civilization from which ours has sprung. Stories of battle, adventure, and exploration are always fascinating; and Caesar's own truthful and convincing narrative of his brilliant military operations in the vast wilderness of western Europe, campaigns embracing in their scope Gaul, Germany, and England, cannot fail to be of interest.

Gaul and its tribes.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum
ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī¹
ipsōrum² linguā Celtae, nostrā³ Gallī appellantur. Hī
omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Hōrum
5 omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā⁴ quod ā cultū
atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, mini-
mēque⁵ ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae
ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proximīque
sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum
10 continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī
quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē

Chapter I.—¹ Supply an antecedent, *those who*. ² *Their own*. ³ Refers back to *linguā*, *in ours*. ⁴ Compound conjunction formed of *propter ea quod*, *on account of this, because*; translate simply *because*. ⁵ *minimē* modifies *saepe*, *least often*.

cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

No special vocabularies are given to these exercises: the student must rely on the general vocabulary at close of book.

The Ambitions of Orgetorix.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, regnī cupiditatē inductus, coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.¹ “Perfacile est,” dixit, “cum virtūte omnibus praestēmus, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.” Id² hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: unā ex parte³ flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; 10 alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā,⁴ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam⁵ nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

Discontent of the Helvetii.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā⁶ ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī⁷ magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō⁸ multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā belli 5 atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

Chapter 2.—¹ Purpose clause, obj. of persuāsit. ² Acc. obj. of persuāsit; eis is ind. obj. and hōc a cause abl., *he persuaded them of this* (lit., *this to them*) *more easily for this reason.* ³ *On one side.* ⁴ *Sc. ex parte.* ⁵ The Romans before Caesar's time had already seized and settled the entire Mediterranean coast of Gaul and had pushed northward to Lake Lemman (Geneva) and westward beyond the line of the Rhone to the Cevennes Mountains. ⁶ *quā ex parte*; an idiom, *for which reason.* ⁷ Nom. pl., agrees with hominēs and governs the gen. gerund bellandī. ⁸ *Prō*, *for*; i. e., *in proportion to.*

The Helvetii begin their preparations.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam¹ maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās
 5 facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī esset, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse exīstimāvērunt: in² tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

The mission of Orgetorix.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, cūius pater regnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus
 5 appellātus erat, ut regnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret,³ quod pater ante habuerat. Itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet ut idem cōnārētur, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Arguments of Orgetorix and result of his mission.

Haec illis probat: perfacile factū est cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus est;⁴ nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae Helvētīi plūrimū⁵ possint;⁶ ipse suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs⁷ regna cō-
 5 ciliātūrus est. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs⁸ iūrandum dant et, regnō occupātō, tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potiri posse spērant.

Chapter 3.—¹ Adv., 161, c. ² The time in the future for which arrangement is made is expressed by *in* with acc., *for the third year*. ³ *Persuādet*, as historical present, here takes secondary sequence; 235, I, c. ⁴ Fut. periphrastic, *was going to seize*. ⁵ Adverbial acc. of extent. ⁶ Governed by *quīn* after a neg. expression of doubt. ⁷ Dat. *for them*. ⁸ *iūs iūrandum*, an oath; a cpd. neut. noun of which both members are declined: Gen., *iūris iūrandi*.

Plot of Orgetorix discovered. His trial and rescue.

4. Ea rēs Helvētiīs est ēnūntiāta. Mōribus¹ suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; eum² damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē³ cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium
 5 omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, cōdem condūxit: per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit.⁴

Death of Orgetorix.

Cum civitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi
 5 mortem cōnsciverit.

The Helvetii continue their preparations for a national migration.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.¹ Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt: frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, com-

Chapter 4.—¹ In accordance with their customs; 340, I, a. ² Sequi with its subj., poenam, follows oportēbat (304, a); eum, him, refers to Orgetorix and is obj. of sequi; damnātum, a pf. ptc. with conditional sense, agrees with eum; the ut clause explains poenam and is in apposition with it (412, 2): if condemned, it was necessary that the penalty fall upon (lit., follow) him, that he be burned with fire. ³ On the appointed day of the pleading of the case. ⁴ He escaped (lit., rescued himself), that he might not plead his case.

Chapter 5.—¹ Explanatory clause in apposition with id.



1. The narrow and difficult pass through which wagons could scarcely be hauled in single file.

2. Bluffs along the Rhone: here no fortification was needed.

būrant, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent: trium mensium¹ molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent
10 finitimīs uti,² eōdem ūsī³ cōsiliō, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur.

The Routes available for the journey.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus¹ domō exīre possent:² ūnum per Sēquanōs, augustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā³ singuli carrī ducerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat,
5 ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent:⁴ alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

The Helvetii negotiate for the easier route.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genava: ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. “Allobrogibus vel persuādēbimus, quod nōndum bonō animō⁵ in populum Rōmānum videntur,”
5 existimābant Helvētīi, “vel vī cogēmus, ut per suōs finēs nōs ire patiantur.” Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.⁶

Caesar takes measures to prevent the migration.

7. Ita Helvētīi per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnābantur. Caesarī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat

Chapter 5.—¹ Gen. of measure; ground grain for three months. ² A frequent form of *ut*. ³ Having adopted the same plan; pf. ptc. of *ūtōr*.

Chapter 6.—¹ The antecedent is sometimes repeated in the relative clause; it need not be translated. ² May be regarded as either rel. characteristic or rel. purpose. ³ Adv., *where*. ⁴ Result clause. ⁵ *Well disposed*; lit., *of good mind*, abl. quality. ⁶ *They should all come*, the purpose for which the day was named.

ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus¹ in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 5 Prœvinciæ² toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Galliâ ulteriore legio una); pontem quî erat ad Genavam iubet rescindi.

The Helvetian commissioners meet Caesar.

Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammæius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent: " Helvetiis³ est in animo sine ulla maleficio 5 iter per prœvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habent nullum. Rogant ut tuâ voluntate id sibi facere liceat."

Caesar craftily plays for time.

Caesar, quod memoriâ tenebat L. Cassium⁴ cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum⁵ non putabat; nam certè, existimabat, hominès inimico animo, datâ facultate per prœvinciam itineris faciendi, iniuriam et maleficium 5 facient. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit: " Diem ad deliberandum sumam. Si quid vultis, revertimini."

Caesar prepares to check the Helvetii.

8. Interea eâ legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex prœvinciâ convenerant, a lacu Lemanno qui in flumen Rhodanum influit ad montem Iuram qui fines Sœquanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum

Chapter 7.—¹ By the very longest marches he is able (to make). ² Dat. ind. obj. of imperat. ³ Dat. of reference or possessor. ⁴ Because he held in memory L. C., the consul, slain and his army routed, etc. ⁵ Inf. of passive periphrastic, esse omitted.

5 decem novem, mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō¹ facilius, sī sē invītō² trānsīre conārentur,³ prohibēre possit.

Caesar refuses to permit the march. The Helvetii attempt to force the passage of the Rhone, and fail.

Ubi ea diēs,⁴ quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, dicit: “Mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare nōn possum; et sī vim facere cōnābiminī, vōs prohibēbō.” Helvētiī,
5 eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iunctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī⁵ perrumpere possent cōnātī sunt; sed operis mūnitiōne et militum con-
10 cursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Dumnorix secures for the Helvetii permission to march through the country of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs viā, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dum-
5 norīx gratiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiā in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte regnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut¹ per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque
10 utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Chapter 8.— 399, I, 3. ² Abl. abs.; against his will, lit., he (being) unwilling. ³ Cōnārentur takes sequence from the meaning of the historical presents dispōnit and commūnit as tenses of past time; possit, from their form. ⁴ Diēs is sometimes fem. ⁵ Sī = whether, an ind. quest.

Chapter 9.— A result clause, obj. of impetrat.

Danger to the province in the movements of the Helvetii.

10. Helvētiīs erat in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum in Santonum finēs iter facere, quī nōn longē a Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Ea rēs Caesarī renūntiātur. Id sī fiat,¹ magnō
5 cum periculō prōvinciae sit,¹ ut² hominēs bellandī cupidōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcos, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs³ habeat.

Caesar prepares for war.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēducit et, quā proximum
5 iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

The march through the Alps.

Ibi Ceutronēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs pulsīs complūribus proeliīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum ceteriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē
5 septimō pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetii ravage the lands of the Haedui, who appeal to Caesar.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in finēs Haeduōrum pervēner-

Chapter 10.—¹ Less vivid fut. condition. ² That it (i. e., the province) should have; this clause is subj. of sit. ³ Pred. appos. of hominēs.



1. Where the Helvetii crossed the river: here Caesar overtook and annihilated the contingent of the canton Tigurinus.

2. Scene of the close of the final battle.

ant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.¹ Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem
 5 mittunt rogātum auxilium. “Ita nōs omnī tempore dē² populō Rōmānō meritī sumus,” dīxērunt, “ut, paene in cōspectū vestrī exercitūs, agrī nostrī vastārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.”

Other tribes also ask aid.

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē agrīs suis vastātīs.³ “Nōn facile,” dīcunt, “ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēmus.” Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad
 5 Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant: “Nōbīs praeter agrī solum nihil est reliquī.”⁴ Quibus rebus adductus, Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi⁵ statuit, dum,⁶ omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsumptīs, in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent.

The Helvetii attempt the passage of the Arar.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum iūfluit, incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus trānsībant.

Caesar surprises them.

Trēs iam partēs¹ cōpiārum Helvētīi id flūmen² trādūxerant; quarta fere pars citrā flūmen Ararim reliqua erat.³ Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam

Chapter 11.—¹ Note the variation in tense and translate accordingly.

² Translate of or from. ³ About their ravaged lands. ⁴ Nothing is left to us; lit., there is nothing of remaining (property). ⁵ Dat. agent.

⁶ Until; 418, I, 1.

Chapter 12.—¹ Acc. dir. obj. ² 309, III. ³ was left.

5 partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit. Reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

A timely vengeance.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīset patrum nostrōrum memoriā,¹ L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum 5 mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars² cīvitatīs Helvētiae īsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps³ poenās persolvit.

Caesar bridges the Arar and overtakes the Helvetii.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī, repentinō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē¹ 5 cōfecerant — ut flūmen trānsīrent —, ille unō diē fēcisset,² lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō³ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico, chief of the Helvetian envoys, speaks threateningly in the negotiations with Caesar.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: “Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi

Chapter 12.—¹ Time within which; *in the memory of*. ² The antecedent noun frequently stands in the relative clause, being represented in the principal clause by a demonstrative pronoun, here *ea*: translate, *that part . . . which . . .* ³ Here an adj., *first*.

Chapter 13.—¹ Superl. of *aegrē*, *with the utmost difficulty*. ² Governed by *cum*: *id* is the dir. obj. ³ *In the war with Cassius*; lit., *in the Cassian war*: note the use of an adj. here.

erunt¹ Helvētīi, ubi tū, Caesar, eōs cōstitueris² atque esse volueris:² sin bellō persequi persevērābis, reminīs-
 5 cere³ et veteris incommodi⁴ populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis⁴ Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsierant, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae virtūtī magno-
 pere tribueris⁵ aut nōs dēspexeris.⁵ Nōs ita ā patribus māt-
 10 oribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur. Quārē nōlī⁶ committere, ut hīc locus ubi cōstitērimus⁷ ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.”

Caesar's reply to Divico.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: “eō¹ mihi minus dubitā-
 tiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō: atque eō² gravius ferō³ quō² minus meritō
 populī Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicūius iniūriæ sibi
 5 cōnsciis fuisset,⁴ nōn fuit difficile cavēre: sed eō dēceptus

Chapter 13.—¹ *And there be*; i. e., *remain*. ² Fut. pf. indic. ³ Imv.
⁴ Obj. of **reminiscere**; verbs of remembering and forgetting govern the gen. ⁵ Pf. subjunc. in a prohibition; 380, III; *a*. ⁶ 380, III., *b*.
⁷ *Where we shall have made our stand*; i. e., for the final battle: *we* refers to the Helvetii, not to Divico and Caesar.

Chapter 14.—¹ *For this reason*, abl. of cause; the *quod* clause is appositional to *eō*. ² Abl. of degree of difference, and used correlatively; 376. ³ **Graviter ferre**, lit., *to bear seriously*, means *to be indignant, angry, grieved*: *and I am the (eō; lit., by this) more indignant, the (quō; lit., by which) less they (i. e., these things, mentioned above) have happened by the merit of the Roman people*: the idea is that the Romans did not deserve such treatment from the Helvetii. ⁴ This conditional sentence has its protasis of one class (past contrary to fact) and its apodosis of another (simple past): such mixed conditions often occur both in Latin and in English: translate, *For if they had been conscious of any injury, it was not difficult to be on their guard*. *Quī sī* is literally *if who*: *quī* is sing. referring to *populī Rōmānī*, but is translated plural because *people*, though sing. in Latin, is usually used as plural in English.

est, quod¹ neque quicquam commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat.

Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellem,² num etiam recentium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere possum
 10 — quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās-
 tis,³ quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs
 vexāstis? Quod⁴ vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriā-
 minī quod⁴ que tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse ad-
 mirāminī, eōdem pertinet. Cōsuērunt⁵ enim diī⁶ im-
 15 mortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum
 doleant, hīs, quōs prō scelere ulcīscī velint,⁷ secundiōrēs
 rēs⁸ et diūturniōrem impūnitātem interdum concēdere.⁹

Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabun-
 tur,¹⁰ utī ea quae polliceāminī¹¹ factūrōs intellegam, et
 20 sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis
 item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam.”

Sudden termination of the negotiations.

Dīvicō respondit: “Ita Helvētīi ā māiōribus suīs insti-
 tūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuerint: eius
 rei populus Rōmānus est testis.”

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

Chapter 14.—¹ Because they neither knew that anything had been done by them why they should fear: **populus**, rendered plural in English, is still the subject. **Quārē** is a rel. and interrog. causal conjunction: it is also written **quā rē**, which then becomes a mere causal abl. ² A mixed condition; pres. contrary to fact, and simple pres.: *but if I were willing* (as I am not) . . . , *can I . . . ?* ³ For **temptāvistis**. ⁴ The two **quod** clauses are subjects of **pertinet**, which remains singular because the two acts constitute one offense. **vōs** is subject of **intulisse**, and because you pride yourselves on having inflicted; lit., wonder to have inflicted. ⁵ For **cōsuēvērunt**: the pf. of **cōsuēscō** is used preteritively; 294, d. ⁶ Nom pl. of **deus**. ⁷ Rel. characteristic; *to such men (hīs) as they may wish to punish*. ⁸ **Secundiōrēs rēs**, greater prosperity. ⁹ Complementary inf. to **cōsuērunt**. ¹⁰ A vivid future condition with two protases, **dabuntur** and **satisfaciētis**. ¹¹ Subjunc. depending on **factūrōs intellegam**; **vōs** the subject of **factūrōs**, is omitted as well as **esse**.

Caesar pursues the Helvetii.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem habēbat, ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum, praemittit quī videant¹
 5 quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō² proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius cōsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat hostem maleficiō et iniuriā prohibēre. Ita diēs³ circiter quīndecim iter
 15 fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn magnum spatium interesset.

Caesar censures the Haedui for failing to furnish grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs¹ frūmentum¹ quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre.² Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat;³
 5 eō autem frūmentō⁴ quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī

Chapter 15.—¹ *Sends ahead to see*, rel. cl. of purpose. ² *Elated by this battle*; the rel. pron. at beginning of a sentence, relating to something previously mentioned, is often best translated by a demonstrative.

³ Acc. extent of time.

Chapter 16.—¹ Acc. of person and thing after verbs of asking. ² *Caesar daily demanded of the Haedui the grain which*, etc.; historical infinitive.

³ *But there was on hand not even a sufficiently large supply of forage.*

⁴ Abl. obj. of ūtī.

āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere¹ Haeduī; cōferri,² comportāri,² adesse² dīcere.¹

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē
 10 frūmentum militibus darī oportēret, convocātis eōrum
 prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat,—
 in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat
 quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus
 et vītae mortisque in suōs habet potestātem,—graviter
 15 eōs accūsāt, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex
 agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs
 hostibus,³ ab eis nōn sublevētur;⁴ praesertim cum māgnā
 ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit,
 multō etiām gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus blames the delay upon a party opposed to the Romans.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus
 quod¹ antea tacuerat prōpōnit: “Esse² nōnnullōs quōrum
 auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm
 plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs multitudinem
 5 dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: prae-
 stāre,³ sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint,³
 Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre;⁴ neque

Chapter 16.—¹ Historical inf. ² Infinitives depending on *dīcere*: the subject of these infinitives is *it*; i. e., the grain: *they said that it was being gathered, that it was on the way* (lit., *being carried*), *that it was nearly there* (lit., *it was near*). ³ Abl. abs. of attendant circumstance, *with the enemy so near*. ⁴ Governed by *quod*: the alleged ground of complaint.

Chapter 17.—¹ Rel. pron., *what*, used as in English, including its own antecedent; the full form would be *id quod, that which*. ² *There are some*; the subject is *nōnnullōs*. ³ The two clauses of a simple condition; the apodosis has become infinitive, the protasis subjunctive, by reason of the ind. disc. ⁴ Inf. subject of *praestāre*; *it is better . . . to endure*

dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint¹ Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.
 10 Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque² in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coērcēri nōn posse. Quīn³ etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.”

*Caesar suspects that Dumnorix is chiefly responsible:
 Liscus admits it.*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus¹ praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeritē conciliū dīmīttit, Liscum retinet. Quāerit ex sōlō ea quae in
 5 conventū dixerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcētō ab aliīs quāerit; reperit esse vēra: “Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālīa habet,² parvō pretiō³
 10 redēpta,⁴ proptereā quod illō licentē⁵ contrā licēri audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem⁶ auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāvit; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū³ semper alit et circum sē habet neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs

Chapter 17.—¹ A vivid future condition in ind. disc.; *superāverint* in the direct discourse was fut. pf., *ēreptūrī sint* is forced into the subjunctive by *quīn* following the verb of doubt. ² Interrog. pron., *quae* + *-que*, and *what goes on in the camp*. ³ *Indeed, because compelled by necessity he has told the thing to Caesar.*

Chapter 18.—¹ Abl. abs., *when too many* (161, a) *were present*. ² Present because the act continues into present time; in English we should say, *for many years he has held*. ³ Abl. of price. ⁴ *Bought in*, the iniquitous custom of private parties buying the privilege of levying taxes was a feature of the age. ⁵ Abl. abs.; *when he bids, no one dares bid against him*: the crushing of competition is by no means a modern invention. ⁶ *Rem familiārem*, *private fortune*.

15 plūrimum potest; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet. Favet
 Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine
 Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius
 dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae
 atque honōris sit restitūsus.¹ Sī quid accidat² Rōmānīs,
 20 summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venit;
 imperiō³ populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam
 dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērat.”

*Caesar decides to punish Dumnorix, but does not wish to
 wound the feelings of Diviciacus.*

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs
 certissimae rēs¹ accēderent,—quod per finēs Sēqua-
 nōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset,² quod obsidēs inter eōs
 dandōs cūrāset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsā-
 5 rētur,—satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eū aut
 ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod³ Dīviciāci
 frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, sum-
 mam in sē⁴ voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, tem-
 10 perantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīvi-
 ciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam
 quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et
 cum eō colloquitur; simul ostendit quae ipsō praesente
 in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et quae
 15 sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit atque

Chapter 18.—¹ 422, I, 3, b; sit is to be taken both with dēminūta and restitūsus; an auxiliary is seldom repeated in a series of passive verbs.
² A mixed condition, less vivid fut. and simple pres.; if anything should happen to the Romans, he comes into very great hope. ³ Under the rule of the Roman people, abl. of attendant circumstance.

Chapter 19.—¹ Facts, in contrast with suspicions. ² Attracted into subjunctive by the force of both accēderent and esse arbitrābātur.
³ The quod clause is in apposition with ūnum. ⁴ Himself; i. e., Caesar.

hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā,¹ statuāt vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

At the request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, ōrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: “ Scīre sē illa¹ esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō² plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā atque ille minimum propter adulēscētiā posset, ille per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā
10 Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum³ utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.”

Haec cum⁴ plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret,
15 Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat;⁵ tantī⁶ apud sē ēius grātiā esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriā et suū dolōrem ēius voluntātī⁷ ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intel-
20 legat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquū tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Chapter 19.—¹ Abl., abs. *after investigating the case.*

Chapter 20.—¹ Acc. pl. neut., subj. of *esse*; *those things*, i. e., the things that were said about Dumnorix. ² *From this*; i. e., from the fact that they were true. ³ Fut. inf., *esse omitted*; *from which thing it would happen* (lit., *would be*) *that*, etc.; the *utī* clause of result is the subj. of *futūrum*. ⁴ A conjunction governing *peteret*. ⁵ A substantive clause of purpose: the usual *ut* is omitted. ⁶ Gen. of indef. value. ⁷ Dat. of reference.

Caesar plans to attack the Helvetii from two sides.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs¹ sub monte cōnsēdisse² mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cōgnōscerent mīsīt. Renūntiātum est
5 facilem³ esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.
10 P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The blunder of Considius frustrates the plan.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-
rētur, ipse¹ ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīn-
gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captivīs
comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,
5 Cōnsidius equō² admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem
quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī;
id³ sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque signīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar
suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit.
Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium
10 committeret,⁴ nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra

Chapter 21.—¹ Acc. pl., subj. of cōnsēdisse: sub monte, at the foot of a mountain. ² Inf. of ind. disc., depends on phrase certior factus. ³ Masc. as referring to the ascent, ascēsus.

Chapter 22.—¹ Ipse throughout this chapter refers to Caesar, Labienus being always mentioned by name. ² With his horse at full speed; abl. abs. of attendant circumstance. ³ Id, this; i. e., the fact that the mountain was occupied by the enemy. ⁴ Caesar originally said, "Do not begin battle unless my forces have been seen, etc.": a simple condition. The verb of command, praeceptum erat, forces the original imperative into the subjunctive, and the protasis, i. e., the dependent, verb is also

vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō denique diē¹ per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra
 15 mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse.² Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō,³ hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar turns toward Bibracte to get supplies. The Helvetii follow.

23. Postridiē ēius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercitui frūmentum darī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prō-
 5 spiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs equitum hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō¹ magis quod pridīe superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent,
 10 sive eō² quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi āc lacescere coepērunt.

attracted into the subjunctive: translate, *Labienus, as had been commanded him by Caesar not to begin battle unless his own (i. e., Caesar's) forces had been seen, etc.* ¹ *Multō diē, late in the day.* ² *Considius . . . had reported to him as seen what he had not seen.* ³ *At the accustomed interval; lit., at what interval he had been accustomed.*

Chapter 23.—¹ *eō magis, the more for this reason.* ² *Sive eō, or for this: two reasons are suggested for the change of plan of the Helvetii; this clause is the alternative to seu quod . . . existimārent, the clause eō magis quod . . . commīsissent explaining the probable reason for their mistaken opinion: The Helvetii, either because they thought the Romans were going away from them panic stricken with fear, the more for this reason that on the day before, though they held the higher positions, they had not joined battle; or for this reason, because they believed that they (i. e., the Romans) could be cut off from supplies, etc.*

Both armies prepare for battle.

24. Postquam id¹ animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō² triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quat-
 5 tuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnserīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri, et eum ab hīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitērant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum
 10 omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange³ factā, sub⁴ prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Desperate battle with the Helvetii.

25. Caesar primum equō¹ suō remōtō deinde omnium equīs ex cōspectū remōtīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō² spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superioriōre pīlis missīs facile hostium phalan-
 5 gem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō³ quod,⁴ plūribus⁵ eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfixīs,

Chapter 24.—¹ The phrase **animum advertit** here is equivalent to the verb **animadvertit** and takes an object, *id*: *after he perceived this*.
² *Half way up the hill*. ³ The Gallic phalanx was a close order formation, the shields of the front rank held vertical, while those of the rest were held above their heads, overlapping like the shingles of a roof. The offensive power of the phalanx lay in mass and momentum only, thus bearing down and crushing the enemy's line: the opportunity for effective use of weapons was slight. ⁴ *Toward*.

Chapter 25.—¹ *When he had removed from sight his own horse first and then had removed the horses of all*. ² *By equalizing the danger of all*.
³ Dat. purpose or service. ⁴ The **quod** clause is the subj. of **erat**.
⁵ Abl. abs.; *when several of their shields had been pierced by one blow of the javelins*. See Chapter 24, note 3. The Romans took advantage of the weak point of the formation.

sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre nōn poterant, ita ut multī māllem scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō
 10 corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille¹ passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī ēt Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant² et novissimis praesidiō erant,
 15 ex itinere nostrōs ā³ latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre;⁴ et id cōspiciātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa⁵ signa bipartitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs⁶ sustinēret.

Their crushing defeat.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī¹ sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī¹ ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc
 5 tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum² hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad³ multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Diū cum esset
 10 pūgnātum, impedimentīs castrisque nostrī potītī sunt.

Chapter 25.—¹ mille is here a noun, a rare usage. ² Closed the enemy's column and served as the rear-guard; lit., were for a guard to the rear (men). ³ On the open flank; i. e., the right, as the left was protected by the shields. ⁴ Supply coepērunt from below. ⁵ A combination of two idioms: signa convertere is to wheel, face about; signa inferre is to charge, advance: The Romans wheeled and charged in two divisions; lit., bore forward their turned standards. ⁶ The oncoming force; i. e., the Boii and Tulingi.

Chapter 26.—¹ The one force . . . the other; i. e., the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi. ² The back of an enemy; lit., an enemy turned around. ³ Far into the night.

Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē¹ filiīs captus est. Ex
 eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt
 eāque tōtā nocte² continenter iērunt: nūllam partem
 noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quartō
 15 pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter
 sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī
 nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas³ litterās nūntiōsque
 mīsīt nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī⁴ sī iūvis-
 sent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse
 20 trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

They surrender. Six thousand escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs
 dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī¹ cum eum in itinere
 convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque
 locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum
 5 essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō
 postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad
 eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā
 circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus ap-
 10 pellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō
 afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multi-
 tūdine suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī
 posse existimārent, primā nocte² ē castris Helvētiōrum
 ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Chapter 26.—¹ ē (ex) with abl. may have the force of a partitive
 gen. and is regularly used after a cardinal numeral. ² *The whole of that*
night, time within which: an acc. of duration would seem more natural,
 but the idea is that at no time *within* the period named were they at rest.
³ Acc. pl., see Vocabulary. ⁴ The rel. pron. is often equivalent to a con-
 junction with a demonstrative; and if they (lit., if who) did assist them,
 he would regard them in the same class as (lit., in which) the Helvētiī.
 The condition is vivid future (sī iūveritis . . . habēbō) forced into the
 ind. disc. by phrase litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt.

Chapter 27.—¹ See Chapter 26, note 4; and when they had met him,
 etc. ² *Early in the night.*

The fugitives recaptured. Final dispositions.

28. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, quōrum per finis ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi¹ purgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs² in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnīs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, 5 in dēditionem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit;³ et quod, omnibus frūmentīs āmissīs, domī nihil erat quō⁴ famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit³ ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; 10 ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent, et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque 15 essent. Petentibus Haeduīs, ut in finibus suis collocārent Boiōs quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque⁵ ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Census of the tribes before and after their march.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs¹ cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus

Chapter 28.—¹ Dat. of ref.; if they wished to be guiltless in his sight; lit., to him: **vellent** is attracted to the subjunc. by **conquīrerent** and **reducerent**. ² Agrees with unexpressed obj. of **habuit**; when they were brought back he held them in the number of his enemies; i. e., executed them. ³ A fine opportunity to compare the constructions with **iubeō** and **imperō**. ⁴ Abl. means; the anteced. is **nihil**; a rel. clause of purpose. ⁵ **Atque** (**ac**) after a word of comparison (here **parem**) means *as: into the same* (lit., *an equal*) *condition of right and liberty as they themselves were*.

Chapter 29.—¹ In Greek letters; the language, of course, was the native Celtic. The Greek alphabet had become known in Gaul through the Greek colony at Marseilles.

in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī¹ numerus domō exisset² eōrum quī arma ferre possent,³ et item
 5 sēparātim puerī,⁴ senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rē-
 rum summa⁵ erat capitum⁶ Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII,
 Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum
 XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre pos-
 sent,³ ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia
 10 CCCXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō,
 ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C
 et X.⁷

Chapter 29.—¹ Adj. form of the interrog. pron. ² Ind. quest. after the phrase *ratiō cōnfecta erat*. ³ Rel. characteristic. ⁴ These nomina-
 tives seem rather loosely used: supply, *had been counted*. ⁵ A noun,
the sum. ⁶ *Capitum Helvētiōrum*, lit., 263,000 *heads of Helvetii*, count-
 ing as we now count "head of cattle": it is best to translate *capitum*,
souls. ⁷ Note the awful losses in ancient wars when hand-to-hand
 fighting prevailed. Even with the tremendously destructive weapons
 of modern warfare the casualties are but a fraction of those in the
 battles of Greek and Roman times.

APPENDIX.

IN the Appendix are contained condensed tables of information valuable in review and for comprehensive presentation of principles.

A.

On Prepositions.

Of the more common prepositions, *ā* (*ab*¹), *cum*, *dē*, *ē* (*ex*¹), *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, govern the ablative; *in* and *sub* govern accusative or ablative, according to their signification of motion or location respectively: most others govern the accusative only.

The employment of prepositions in English is very extensive, and correspondingly idiomatic. The student must take the greatest care in translating his English prepositions into Latin, examining them carefully to ascertain their force. *When hesitating between the use of a preposition and a case-form, search for an idea of motion or location; if you find it, use the preposition; if not, use the case-form.* A few examples may be useful:

(a) *By*.—*He was slain by Brutus*; this expresses agency with passive voice, *ā* with abl. *He was killed by a stone*, means, abl. without any preposition. *He informed Caesar by messenger*: agency with active voice, *per* with acc. *He informed Caesar by letter*, means, abl. without preposition. *He sat by the river*: nearness, *ad* with acc. *He rode by the city*: motion past, *praeter* with acc.

¹ *ā* and *ē* are used only before consonants; *ab* and *ex*, before vowels and some consonants.

(b) **For.**—*He sent for Cassius*: a real verb idea, use verb *to summon* with direct object. *He sent a messenger for Cassius*, *He sent a messenger to bring Cassius*, an entire change of idiom. *He died for love*: cause, causal abl. or *prae* with abl. or *propter* with acc. *He died for Rome*; i. e., *in behalf of Rome*, *prō* with abl. *He could not speak for weeping*: a preventing obstacle, *prae* with abl. *For that reason*: cause, causal abl., *propter* or *ob* with acc., or *dē* with abl. *Their boundaries were too narrow for their numbers*: proportion, *prō* with abl. *His crime was too great for pardon*: a relative idiom, *his crime was greater than which could be pardoned*. *To ask for is to request or demand*.

(c) **From.**—*He went from the city*; *ē* or *ā* with abl., depending on whether he went *out of* or *from the vicinity of* the city. *He died from poison*: cause, abl. *He conceals from*, a double acc. idiom; so also *he demands from*.

(d) **With.**—*He went with Caesar*: accompaniment, *cum* with abl. *High heads with branching antlers*: description, abl. case. *He came with danger*, *cum* with abl. *He came with all his troops*: military phrase, abl. without preposition.

In general, the student must never lose sight of the fact that Latin words do not represent English *words*, but *ideas*. A given idea is the same the world over; but English expresses it one way, Latin another.

B. Stem Changes in Verb Formation.

The following rules are to be understood to apply equally to the active and passive voices except when otherwise indicated.

(a) Present Stem.

1. First conjugation. Stem vowel absorbed by ending in 1st sing. pr. ind., and unites with pr. subj. tense sign *ē* to form *ē*.

2. Second conjugation. No changes.

3. Third conjugation. In pr. ind., stem vowel absorbed by

ending in 1st sing., changes to *i* in 2d (act. only) and 3d sing., 1st and 2d plur., and to *u* in 3d plur. In imp. ind., stem vowel becomes *ē* before *bā*. In fut. ind. and pr. subj., stem vowel absorbed by tense sign. In inv., stem vowel changes to *i*, except in 2d sing. pr., where it remains, and 3d pl. fut., where it becomes *u*. In pr. inf. pass. stem vowel absorbed by ending.

(a) Third in *-iō*. Stem vowel *ī* becomes *e* in pr. inf. act., 2d sing. pr. inv., 2d sing. pr. ind. pass., and in the imperf. subj.; *u* is added to stem in 3d pl. pr. ind. and 3d pl. fut. inv. *ē* is added to stem in imperf. ind., and *e* in pr. ptc., gnd. and gndve. ptc. Stem vowel absorbed by ending of pr. inf. pass.

4. Fourth conjugation. *u* is added to stem vowel in 3d pl. pr. ind. and 3d pl. fut. inv. *ē* is added to stem vowel in imp. ind., and *e* in pr. ptc., gnd. and gndve. ptc.

(b) Perfect Stem.

The perfect stem undergoes no changes except the occasional dropping of a final *v* and the resulting contraction.

(c) Supine Stem.

The supine stem undergoes no changes.

Tense Sign Changes in Verb Formation.

Ind.—*bā*, no change; *bi*, *i* absorbed by flexive in 1st sing., becomes *e* in 2d sing. pass., becomes *u* in 3d pl.; *ē* in fut. ind. becomes *a* in 1st sing.; *erā*, no change, *erī*, *i* absorbed by flexive in 1st sing.

Subj.—*ē* and *ā* absorb stem vowel in 1st and 3d conj. respectively, elsewhere no change; *rē*, no change; *erī*, no change; *issē*, no change.

C. Scheme of Formation of the Regular Verb.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.				PASSIVE.		
Tense.	Stem used.	Tense Sign.	Flexive.	Stem used.	Tense Sign.	Flexive.
Pres.	pr.		o, s, t.	pr.		or, ris, or re, tur.
Imperf.	pr.	bā	mus, tis, nt. m, s, t.	pr.	bā	mur, minī, ntur. r, ris, or re, tur.
Fut.	pr.	i., ii., bi	mus, tis, nt. o, s, t, etc.	pr.	i., ii., bi	mur, minī, ntur. or, ris, or re, tur, etc.
		iii., iv., ē	m, s, t, etc.		iii., iv., ē	r, ris, or re, tur, etc.
Perf.	pf.		ī, istī, it. imus, istis, ērunt, ēre.	sp.		us (-a, -um), sum.
Pluperf.	pf.	erā	m, s, t, etc.	sp.		us (-a, -um), eram.
Fut. Perf.	pf.	eri	o, s, t, etc.	sp.		us (-a, -um), erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	pr.	i., ē; ii., iii., iv., ā	m, s, t. mus, tis, nt. m, s, t, etc.	pr.	i., ē; ii., iii., iv., ā	r, ris, or re, tur. mur, minī, ntur. r, ris, or re, tur, etc.
Imperf.	pr.	rē		pr.	rē	
Perf.	pf.	erī	m, s, t, etc.	sp.		us (-a, -um), sim.
Pluperf.	pf.	issē	m, s, t, etc.	sp.		us (-a, -um), essem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	pr.	—.	pr.	re. minī.
Fut.	pr.	te. tō, tō. tōte, ntō.	pr.	tor, tor. —, ntor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	pr.	rē.	pr.	i., ii., iv., rī. iii., ī.
Perf.	pf.	isse.	sp.	us (-a, -um), esse.
Fut.	sp.	ūrus (-a, -um), esse.	sp.	um īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	pr.	ns (ntis).		
Fut.	sp.	ūrus, -a, -um.		
Perf.			sp.	us, -a, -um.
Gerund.			pr.	ndus, -a, -um.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Case.	Stem used.	Tense Sign.	Flexive.		Stem used.	Tense Sign.	Flexive.
Gen.	pr.		ndī.	Former.	sp.		um.
Dat.	pr.		ndō.	Latter.	sp.		ū.
Acc.	pr.		ndum.				
Abl.	pr.		ndō.				

D. Synopses.

Verb, gerō. Prin. pts., gerō, gerē-re, gess-i, gest-um. Stems, gerē, gess, gest.

1st singular.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Pres.	gerō	geror	geram	gerar			gerere	geri	gerens	gerens
Imp.	gerēbam	gerēbar	gerem	gerer			gestūrus esse	gestum iri	gestūrus	gestus
Fut.	geram	gerar					gessisse	gestus esse		
Perf.	gessi	gestus sum	gesserim	gestus sim						
Ppfr.	gesseram	gestus eram	gessissem	gestus essem						
F. Pl.	gesserō	gestus erō								

Gerundive.

gerendus

Gerund.—Gen. gerendi

Supine.—Former gestum

Dat. gerendō

Later gestū

Acc. gerendum

Abl. gerendō

Verb, iubeō. Prin. pts., iubeō, iubē-re, iuss-i, iuss-um. Stems, iubē, iuss, iuss.

2d plural.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Pres.	iubētis	iubēmini	iubeātis	iubeāmini	iubēte	iubēmini	iubere	iuberi	iubens	iubens
Imp.	iubēbātis	iubēbāmini	iubērētis	iubērēmini			iussūrus esse	iussum iri	iussūrus	iussus
Fut.	iubēbitis	iubēbimini			iubētōte		iussisse	iussus esse		
Perf.	iussistis	iussi estis	iusseritis	iussi sitis						
Ppfr.	iusseram	iussi erātis	iussissetis	iussi essētis						
F. Pl.	iusserō	iussi eritis								

Gerundive.

iubendus

Gerund.—Gen. iubendi

Supine.—Former iussum

Dat. iubendō

Later iussū

Acc. iubendum

Abl. iubendō

E. Classification of Verbs.**(a) Transitive.****(b) Intransitive.****(c) Deponent.****(d) Semi-deponent.**1. Directly. *Audeō, gaudeō, soleō, cōfidō.*2. Inversely. *Revertor.***(e) Irregular.** *Sum, prōsum, possum, ferō, eō, fiō, volō, nōlō, mālō (edō).***(f) Defective.**1. Preteritive. *Coepī, meminī, ōdī.*2. Other less common defectives, *aiō, inquam.***(g) Impersonal.**

1. Verbs admitting as subject only an infinitive or clause.

2. Passive of intransitives.

3. Verbs of feeling.

4. Verbs of natural phenomena.

(h) Verb phrases.

1. Periphrastics.

F. The Uses of Ut.**(a) With the Indicative.**1. As a comparative conjunction of manner, with or without the correlatives *sic, ita*, etc.—*e. g.:**ita ut intrā silvās aciem constituerant, precisely as they had arranged their line within the forest.*2. As a restrictive conjunction of manner, *e. g.:**civitas florēns, ut est captus Germānōrum, a flourishing state, as is the idea of the Germans.*

3. As temporal particle, *e. g.*:

in tabernaculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, *he was caught in his tent when he had gone to rest at midday.*

4. As a causal particle, *e. g.*:

hōrum auctoritatē finitimī adducti, ut sunt Gallōrum subita cōsilia, *their neighbors were induced by their example, because the character of the Gauls is impulsive.*

5. As an interrogative conjunction of manner, *how?* *e. g.*:

ut ea rēs colloquium derēmit? *how did this break up the conference?*

6. In parenthetic clauses, *e. g.*:

Rhēnum, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit, *it borders the Rhine, as I said.*

(b) With the Subjunctive.

1. In purpose clauses, pure and substantive.

2. In result clauses, pure and substantive.

3. In appositive or explanatory clauses.

4. In negative clauses of fear.

5. In concessive clauses, *e. g.*:

1. nostrī, ut impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant, *our men were ready under arms to attack them encumbered. his persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur, nōn poterat, these could not be persuaded to wait longer.*

2. ita currūs collocant, ut expeditū receptum habeant, *they so place the chariots that they have a ready retreat. Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs sūmpserat, ut nōn ferendus viderētur, Ariovistus had put on such airs that he seemed unendurable.*

3. id, ut Gallī bellī renovandī cōsiliū caperent, *this fact, that the Gauls adopted the plan of renewing war.*

4. Labiēnus veritus (est) ut hostium impetum sustinēre posset, *Labiēnus feared he would not be able to withstand the enemy's attack.*

5. ac iam, ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimū nāvibus posse perspiciebant, *and now, though everything was happening contrary to their expectations, they realized that they were very strong in ships.*

G.

Table of Latin Pronouns.

I. Personal.	{	1. <i>Simple</i> .	{	1st pers. ego; pl. nōs. 2d pers. tū; pl. vōs. 3d pers. Wanting; supplied when needed by a demonstrative, in simplest uses is.
		2. <i>Reflexive</i> .	{	1st pers. Oblique cases of ego, nōs. 2d pers. Oblique cases of tū, vōs. 3d pers. sē, emph. sēsē; pl. same.
II. Possessive.	{	1. 1st pers.	{	Singular possessor, meus. Plural possessor, noster.
		2. 2d pers.	{	Singular possessor, tuus. Plural possessor, vester.
		3. 3d pers.	{	<i>Simple</i> . { Wanting; supplied by genitive of a demon- strative, in simplest uses eius, eōrum. <i>Reflexive</i> . { Singular possessor, suus. Plural possessor, suus.
III. Demonstrative.	{	1. Near. hic.	4. Of 2d pers. iste.	
		2. Remote. ille.	5. Iterative. ipse.	
		3. Weak. is.	6. Identical. idem.	
IV. Relative.—Quī, quae, quod.				
V. Interrogative.	{	<i>Substantive</i> .—Quis, quae, quid.		
		<i>Adjective</i> .—Quī, quae, quod.		
		<i>Emphatic</i> .—Quisnam, quaenum, quidnam (quod- nam).		
VI. In- definite.	{	1. Aliquis, simplest of the indefinites.		
		2. Quis, qua, quid, after sī, nē, num.		
		3. Quidam, a certain, a definite one though unstated.		
		4. Quispiam, any.		
		5, 6. Quivīs, quilibet, any you please, very indefinite.		
		7. Quisque, each.		
		8. Unusquisque; emphatic, each and every one.		
		9. Uterque, either, both.		
		10. Quisquam, any, any at all, chiefly in negative sentences.		
		VII. Relative Indefinite.—Quicumque, quisquis, whoever.		
VIII. Reciprocal.—Inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē, each other.				

H.

Table of Correlatives.

Idea expressed.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative.	Relative.	Relative Indefinite.
Person or thing.	quis	{ aliquis, and the various indefinite pronouns.	The various demonstrative pronouns.	{ qui	quicumque, quisquis.
Place where.	ubi	alicubi	ibi	ubi	ubicumque, ubiubi
Place whence.	unde	alicunde	inde	unde	undecumque
Place whither.	quo	aliquo	eō, hūc	quō	quocumque
Time when.	quando	aliquando	nunc, iam, tum, tunc	quando, cum	quandocumque
Time how long.	quamdiū	aliquamdiū	tamdiū	quamdiū	quamcumque diū
Size.	quantus	aliquantus	tantus	quantus	quantuscumque
Quality.	quālis	aliquālis	talīs	qualis	qualiscumque
Manner.	ut, quōmodo	aliquōmodo	sic, ita, tam, adeo, tantōpere, eiusmodi, etc.	ut, quam, quantōpere.	utcumque, quomocumque.
Number.	quot	aliquot	tot	quot	quotcumque, quot-
Repetition.	quotiēns	aliquotiēns	totiēns	quotiēns	quotienscumque
Route.	quā	aliquā	eā, hac, etc.	quā	quacumque

I. Common Co-ordinate Conjunctions.

Co-ordinate conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal rank. They are:

(a) Copulative, i. e., *joining*.

et, and: *et*, . . . *et*, *both* . . . *and*: *-que* (enclitic), *and*, close union into a group: *atque* or *ac*, *and*, *and also*, emphasizing the second of the connected things or statements: *neque* or *nec*, *and* . . . *not*, *nor*: *neque* . . . *neque* or *nec* . . . *nec*, *neither* . . . *nor*: *nē* . . . *quidem*, *not even*, with emphatic word between *nē* and *quidem*.

(b) Disjunctive, i. e., *separating*.

Objective.—*aut*, *or*: *aut* . . . *aut*, *either* . . . *or*, an alternation of things mutually exclusive.

Subjective.—*vel*, *or*: *vel* . . . *vel*, *either* . . . *or*, a choice of alternatives. *sive* or *seu*, *or*, *or if*, *whether*: *sive* . . . *sive* or *seu* . . . *seu*, *either* . . . *or*, *whether* . . . *or*.

(c) Adversative, i. e., *contrasting*.

at, *sed*, *but*: *vērō*, *autem*, *but*, *however*: *tamen*, *nevertheless*.

(d) Causal, i. e., *assigning reasons*.

nam, *namque*, *enim*, *for*.

(e) Illative, i. e., *making inference*.

itaque, *and so*, *accordingly*, *therefore*, of actual result of facts.
igitur, *therefore*, *accordingly*, of logical inference; not in Caesar.

J. Uses of the Cases.

A. Nominative.

1. Subject (308).

2. Appositive, attributive or predicate.

B. Genitive.**I. With Nouns.**

1. Limiting noun not meaning same thing (330).
(a) Possessive. (b) Partitive. (c) Material or Composition. (d) Subjective. (e) Objective. (f) Attribute.
2. Genitive of Quality (334).

II. With Adjectives (335).**III. With Verbs.**

1. Predicate Genitive of Possessor (339, I).
2. With verbs of remembering and forgetting (339, II).
3. With impersonals (339, III).
4. With **interest** (339, IV).
5. Genitive of Indefinite Value (339, V).

C. Dative.**I. As Indirect Object.**

1. Simple Indirect Object (318, I).
2. With Verbs Transitive in English (318, II).
3. With Compound Verbs (318, III).

II. As the Case of Direction of Influence.

1. Dative of Reference (322, I).
2. With Adjectives and Verbal Derivatives (322, II).
3. Dative of Possessor (326, III).
4. Dative of Purpose or Service (326, IV).
5. Dative of Agent (326, V).

D. Accusative.**I. As Direct Object.**

1. Simple Direct Object (309, I).
2. Object and Predicate (309, II).
3. With Compounds of **trāns** (309, III).
4. Two Accusatives, Person and Thing (309, IV).

II. Accusative of Extent.

1. Duration of Time (313, I).
2. Extent of Space (313, II).
3. Adverbial (313, III).

III. Terminal Accusative (314).**E. Vocative.**

1. Case of Direct Address.

F. Ablative.**I. Ablative of Explanatory Circumstance.**

1. Ablative of Cause (340, I).
2. Ablative of Manner (340, II).
3. Ablative of Accompaniment (340, III).
4. Ablative of Means or Instrument (344, IV).
5. Ablative of Agent (344, V).
6. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance (344, V).

II. Ablative with Certain Deponents (348).**III. Ablative of Respect (349).****1. Ablative in Comparison and Contrast.**

- (a) Ablative with Comparatives (353, I).
- (b) Ablative of Degree of Difference (353, II).

IV. Ablative of Quality (357).**V. Ablative of Separation (358).****VI. Ablative of Place and Time.**

1. Ablative of Place Where (362, I).
2. Ablative of Place Whence (362, II).
3. Ablative of Time When (362, III).
4. Ablative of Time Within Which (362, III).

VII. Ablative of Source or Origin (366, I).**VIII. Ablative of Price (366, II).****IX. Ablative with Opus (366, III).****X. Ablative with Adjectives (366, IV).****XI. Ablative Absolute (369).**

K. Uses of the Subjunctive.

A. In Principal Clauses (383).

I. Hortatory.

II. Jussive.

(a) In Mild Commands.

(b) In Prohibitions, *nē* with perfect tense.

III. Optative or Volitive.

IV. Potential.

V. Deliberative (not in Caesar).

B. In Dependent Clauses.

I. In Purpose Clauses (399).

1. With *ut* or *nē* in pure or substantive clauses.

2. With *quō* accompanied by a comparative.

3. With a relative.

II. In Result Clauses (407).

1. With *ut* or *ut nōn* in pure or substantive clauses.

2. With a relative.

III. In Appositive Clauses of Explanation; with *ut* or *ut nōn* (412, 2).

IV. In Clauses after Doubt, Hinder, Refuse, etc. (413).

1. With *quīn* after negative expressions of doubt.

2. With *nē*, *quōminus*, *quīn* (after neg.) after verbs of hindrance, refusal, prevention.

V. In Clauses of Fear (414).

1. With *nē* for positive fear.

2. With *ut* for negative fear.

VI. In Conditional Sentences.

1. Contrary to Fact (429, II).

2. Less Vivid Future (433, II).

VII. In Temporal Clauses (418).

1. With *dum* and *quoad*, *until*.

2. With *antequam* and *priusquam*.

3. With *cum*.

VIII. In Causal Clauses (422).

1. With **cum**.
2. With **quod**, on another's authority.
3. With a relative.

IX. In Concessive Clauses (423).

1. With **cum**.
2. With **ut**. (Rare in Caesar.)
3. With a relative.

X. In Indirect Discourse (439).

1. All subordinate clauses.
2. Indirect questions (444).

XI. In Relative Sentences (449).

1. Attraction.
2. Relative characteristic.

L. To Identify Subjunctive Uses in Caesar.

First and most important: Find the word or construction on which the subjunctive depends.

I. It may depend on **cum**.

A subjunctive depending on **cum** may express—

- (a) **Time**: **cum** temporal, *when*; imp. and plp. tenses only.
- (b) **Cause**: **cum** causal, *since, because*; all tenses.
- (c) **Concession**: **cum** concessive, *although, though*; all tenses.

Having found a subjunctive depending on **cum**, select that explanation which in your judgment best suits the sense of the passage.

II. It may depend on **ut**.

A subjunctive depending on **ut** may express—

- (a) The **Purpose** of the action of the principal verb.

It is especially certain to express purpose if the principal verb means *advise, exhort, order, persuade, wish*, or puts another verb into action in any way.

(b) The **Result** of the action of the principal verb.

It is especially certain to express result—(1) if the principal clause contains a demonstrative word, such as **sic**, **ita**, **tam**, **tantopere**, **tantus**, **tālis**; or (2) if the verb of the principal clause means *effect*, *bring about*, *happen*; and (3) if **ut** is modified by **nōn**.

(c) A **Fear** that something *will not happen*.

Remark.—**Ut** is also found with the indicative, and then means *as*, *when*, or *because*.

III. It may depend on **nē**.

A subjunctive depending on **nē** may express—

(a) **Negative Purpose**, especially if the principal verb means *advise*, *exhort*, *order*, *persuade*, *wish*, etc.

(b) **Fear** that something *will happen*.

(c) **Prevention**, when governed by **prohibeō**.

(d) A **negative command** in indirect discourse.

IV. It may depend on **dum** or **quoad**, *until*; on **antequam** or **priusquam** (often separated, **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**), *before*; on **etsi**, *although*.

V. It may depend on **quod**, *because*, when the cause is stated on another's authority, claim, or belief.

VI. It may depend on **quō**, as a purpose construction with the comparative degree of an adjective or adverb nearly always found in the clause.

VII. It may depend on **quīn** after a negative verb of *doubt* or *hindrance*, or on **quōminus** after any verb of *hindrance*, *prevention*, or *refusal*.

VIII. It may lie in a **less vivid future** (present or perfect tense) or **contrary to fact** (imperfect or pluperfect tense) **condition**. Here the **protasis**, or *if* clause, will be introduced by **sī** or sometimes expressed by a participle.

IX. It may depend on a **relative pronoun** or less often on a **relative adverb**.

A subjunctive dependent on a relative may express—

(a) **Purpose.**—This is especially the case when the relative clause denotes *the thing to be done by the antecedent* or *the use to be made of the antecedent*: the antecedent is usually the object of the principal clause or its subject if passive, though other cases occur.

(b) **Result** (rare).

(c) **Cause.**—Here the relative is sometimes preceded and strengthened by *ut*.

(d) **Concession.**

(e) **Characteristic**, especially if the antecedent be negative or interrogative. Subjunctives depending on a relative must be identified by the sense of the passage.

X. It may lie in an **indirect question**: here the clause is always introduced by an *interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb*.

XI. It may lie in a **dependent clause in indirect discourse**. Before assigning indirect discourse as the reason for a given subjunctive, even though you know that it lies in indirect discourse, *be sure that no other rule applies to it*.

M. Elements of Word Formation.

In all languages of the family to which English and Latin belong it is possible to form from many words a number of other words of kindred form and meaning. Such words may be formed by joining two (rarely more) words into a compound, a process known as **composition**, and by **derivation**, by which is meant adding certain suffixes to the root or stem of the parent word, which is called the *primitive*. The suffixes themselves indicate the special force and meaning of the new word, and are known as significant endings. Those suffixes have been especially selected which give rise to similar endings in English.

Derivation.

(a) Nouns.

1. The doer of an act is indicated by the endings **-tor** (G. **-tōris**), m., and **-trīx** (G. **-trīcis**), f., generally affixed to the supine stem. If the supine ends in **-sum**, **-sor** is used euphonically for **-tor**, *e. g.*:

agō, *do*; **actor**, *doer*, **ACTOR**: **vincō**, *conquer*; **victor**, *conqueror*, **VICTOR**; **victrix**, *conqueress*: **imperō**, *command*; **imperātor**, *commander*: **dēfendō**, *defend*; **dēfensor**, *defender*: **inveniō**, *discover*; **inventor**, **inventrix**, *discoverer*, **INVENTOR**, **INVENTRESS**. The identity of these endings with the **-or** and **-er** (fem., **-ess** and **-tress**) of English agent-words is evident.

2. The act itself is indicated by **-iō** and **-tiō** (G. **-ōnis**), Eng. **-TION**, **-SION**; **-tūra**, Eng. **-TURE**; **-tus** (G. **-tūs**), Eng. forms direct from stem with no significant ending; euphonic forms in **-siō**, etc., as above, *e. g.*:

agō, *do*; **actiō**, **ACTION**: **petō**, *seek*; **petitiō**, *a seeking*, **PETITION**: **scribō**, *write*; **scriptūra**, *a writing*, **SCRIPTURE**: **coniciō**, *throw together*; **coniectūra**, *a throwing together, a guess*, **CONJECTURE**: **adveniō**, *arrive*; **adventus**, *arrival*, **ADVENT**: **cādō**, *happen*; **cāsus**, *accident, chance*, **CASE**.

3. The act or its result is denoted by **-men** (G. **-minis**), **-mentum**, Eng. **-MENT**, *e. g.*:

fluō, *flow*; **flūmen**, *river*: **fruor**, *enjoy*; **frūmentum**, *grain*: **impediō**, *hinder*; **impedimentum**, *hindrance*, **IMPEDIMENT**: **nōscō**, *know*; **nōmen**, *name*.

4. Abstract nouns are formed by **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās** (G. **-tātis**), Eng. **-Y** and **-TY**; **-tūs** (G. **-tūtis**), Eng. **-TUE**; **-tūdō** (G. **-tūdinis**), Eng. **-TUDE**. These are appended chiefly to adjective stems, though in some instances to nouns also, *e. g.*:

amicus, *friendly*; **amicitia**, *friendship*, **AMITY**: **audax**, *bold*; **audācia**, *boldness*, **AUDACITY**: **levis**, *light*; **levitās**, *lightness*, **LEVITY**: **cīvis**, *citizen*; **cīvitās**, *citizenship, state*: **vir**, *man*, **virtūs**, *manliness, courage*, **VIRTUE**: **multus**, *much*; **multitūdō**, **MULTITUDE**.

5. **Place.**—The terminations **-tōrium**, **-ārium**, Eng. same, also **-ORY**, **-ARY**, **-URY**, express the place where an act occurs or a thing is found, *e. g.*:

audiō, *hear*; **auditōrium**, *hall*, AUDITORIUM: **aes**, *money*, **aerārium**, *treasury*.

(b) Adjectives.

1. **Diminutives**, usually employed as nouns. They indicate an object smaller than the primitive, and the chief endings are **-ulus** (**-a**, **-um**), **-ōlus** (**-a**, **-um**), *e. g.*:

rīvus, *brook*; **rīvulus**, *rivulet*: **filius**, *son*; **filiōlus**, *little son*.

2. **Belonging to or pertaining to** are expressed by **-ālis**, Eng. **-AL**; **-ānus**, **-īnus**, Eng. **-AN**, **-ANE**, **-INE**; **-icus**, Eng. **-IC**, *e. g.*:

caput, *head*; **capitālis**, CAPITAL: **urbs**, *city*; **urbānus**, URBAN, also in slightly diff. sense URBANE: **cīvis**, *citizen*; **cīvicus**, CIVIC.

3. **Provided with** is indicated by **-ātus**, **-ītus**, usually formed on noun stems and resembling participles. English shows a like formation in *bearded*, *booted*, *eared*, *e. g.*:

barba, *beard*; **barbātus**, *bearded*: **turris**, *tower*; **turrītus**, *turreted*.

4. **Full of** is indicated by **-ōsus**, Eng. **-OSE**, *e. g.*:

verbum, *word*; **verbōsus**, *wordy*, VERBOSE: **periculum**, *danger*; **periculōsus**, *dangerous*.

5. The principal terminations used in deriving adjectives of quality or tendency from verbs are: **-idus**, Eng. **-ID**, **-ilis** (also **-bilis**, **-tilis**), Eng. **-ILE**, **-BLE**, *e. g.*:

cupiō, *desire*; **cupidus**, *desirous*: **fluō**, *flow*; **fluidus**, *flowing*, FLUID. **amō**, *love*; **amābilis**, AMIABLE: **faciō**, *do*; **facilis**, *easy*, FACILE.

(c) Verbs.

1. **Verbs Formed from Nouns and Adjectives.**—These are called **denominatives**, and are formed from the noun

or adjective stem modified in various ways, readily discerned when met with, *e. g.*:

nōmen, name; *nōminō*, to name: *hiems*, winter; *hiemō*, to pass the winter: *moles*, mass; *molior*, toil: *metus*, fear; *metuō*, to fear.

2. Verbs from Other Verbs.

(a) **Inceptive verbs** represent an action or state as beginning. They are formed by adding *-scō* to the present stem of the primitive. They are of the third conjugation. Of many, the primitive has disappeared. Inceptives are also formed on noun stems, *e. g.*:

caleō, be warm; *calēscō*, to grow warm: *mītis*, mild; *mītēscō*, to grow mild; so *quiēscō*, *nōscō*, etc.

(b) **Frequentative, intensive, or iterative verbs** represent the action as performed violently, earnestly, or repeatedly. They end in *-tō* or *-itō*, are of the first conjugation, and usually formed from the supine stem of the primitive, *e. g.*:

iaciō, throw; *iactō*, hurl: *dicō*, say; *dictitō*, repeat, assert.

Composition.—The chief classes of composites are—

(a) Those whose first member is a preposition, chiefly verbs or words derived from compound verbs. In forming these compounds *ā* in the verb stem becomes *i* before one consonant, *e* before two; but *ā* remains unchanged, *e. g.*:

faciō, *conficiō*, *confectus*; *agō*, *subigō*, *subāctus*.

(b) Two words may be joined, the first member exhibiting some easily recognized stem modification, *e. g.*:

From *arma* and *gerō* comes *armiger*, armor-bearer; *quīnque*, *decem*, *quīndecim*, *fifteen* (= *five-ten*); *magnus*, *animus*, *magnanimus*, *high-minded*.

N. The Roman Calendar.

(a) Dates were reckoned by the Romans in a very complicated way. The month was divided into three periods:

1. **Kalends** (**Kalendae**), the first of each month.

2. **Nones** (**Nōnae**), the fifth of each month except March, May, July, October, in which the Nones fell on the seventh.

3. **Ides** (**Idūs**, f.), the thirteenth of each month except March, May, July, October; then the fifteenth.

(b) Any date between Kalends and Nones was reckoned by the number of days before the Nones; between Nones and Ides, by the number of days before the Ides; after the Ides, by the number of days before the Kalends of the following month.

(c) The names of the months are adjectives when writing dates, and stand in agreement with **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, and **Idūs**, which are feminine nouns of Decl. i, i, and iv.

(d) A date falling on the Kalends, Nones, or Ides is expressed by a time ablative, *e. g.*:

Caesar Idibus Martiis mortuus est, *Caesar died on the Ides of March (March 15th).*

(e) In naming other dates, the phrase **ante diem** with an ordinal is used like a preposition governing the accusative, *e. g.*:

Caesar ante diem quartum Idūs Iūliās nātus est, *Caesar was born on the fourth day before the Ides of July (July 12th).*

In practice these expressions for dates are regularly abbreviated, the two above given appearing respectively as **Id. Mart.** and **a. d. iv Id Iūl.** or **iv Id. Iūl.**

(f) In reckoning dates the Romans counted in the day from which they started to reckon, and in case they were reckoning up to Kalends they counted that in also. Hence

to translate a date we must observe the following rule: If the given date be before the Nones or Ides, add one to the date on which these periods fall in the given month and subtract the numeral: if before the Kalends, add two to the number of days in the month in which the date lies (this will be the month preceding that whose Kalends are named) and subtract the numeral. The day before a period is expressed by *prīdiē* with the accusative, *e. g.*:

a. d. iv Nōn Ap.	=	5 + 1 - 4	=	April 2d.
a. d. iii Id. Sept.	=	13 + 1 - 3	=	Sept. 11th.
a. d. vi Id. Oct.	=	15 + 1 - 6	=	Oct. 10th.
a. d. ix Kal. Ap.	=	31 + 2 - 9	=	Mar. 24th.
prīd Kal. Iān.	=			Dec. 31st.

(g) The names of the months were *Iānuārius*, *Februārius*, *Martius*, *Aprīlis*, *Māius*, *Iūnius*, *Iūlius*, *Augustus*, *September* (G. -bris), *Octōber*, *November*, *December*.

July and August were named for Julius Caesar and the Emperor Augustus respectively, being previously called *Quinctilis* and *Sextilis*.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Compound verbs are indicated by a hyphen separating the members. The chief euphonic changes of prepositions in composition are as follows: ab + t = abst.; ad + c = acc.; ad + f = aff.; ad + p = app.; ad + sc = asc.; con + l = coll.; con + m = comm.; ex + f = eff.; in + l = ill.; ob + c = occ.; ob + f = off.; ob + p = opp.; sub + c = succ.; sub + p = supp. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are marked I; the principal parts of all others are indicated. English derivatives are indicated by small capitals.

A.

A., abbreviation for *Aulus*.

ā, **ab**, prep. w. abl., *from; by; on, at; on the side of; ā latere, on the flank.*

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away.*

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away.*

abs-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, **AB-STAIN.**

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be absent, distant.*

ac. See *atque*.

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *approach; be added.*

acceptus, -a, -um, adj., pf. ptc. of accipiō, *popular.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *happen.*

ac-cipiō, -ēre, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, ACCEPT.*

ac-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run to.*

ac-cūsō, I, **ACCUSE.**

ācer, ācris, -e, adj., *sharp, severe.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *battle line.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, severely.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, toward; against; near.*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *induce.*

ad-eō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *go to, approach, visit.*

ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *admit.*

adhūc, adv., *hitherto.*

aditus, -ūs, m., *access; approach.*

ad-miror, I, dep., *wonder; ADMIRE.*

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let loose; equō admissō, with his horse at a gallop.*

admodum, adv., *somewhat, very.*

ad-orior, -irī, -ortus, dep., *attack.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present.*

Aduātuci, -ōrum, *the Aduatuci.*

adulēscētia, -ae, f., *youth.*

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *facing; ADVERSE.*

adversus, prep. w. acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, *turn toward: with animum; pay attention to, notice.*

aedificium, -ī (-iī), n., *building.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*

aequō, I, **EQUALIZE.**

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level; fair, just.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

af-ferō, -ferre, attulī, allatum, *bring.*

- af-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, AF-FECT, *treat*.
 affinitās, -tātis, f., *relationship*.
 ager, -grī, m., *land, field*.
 agger, -eris, m., *earthwork, rampart*.
 ag-gredior, -ī, -gressus, dep., *attack*.
 agmen, -inis, n., *column (of men)*.
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; lead; do; confer*.
 agricola, -ae, m., *farmer*.
 aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to another; foreign; unfavorable*.
 aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *some one, some thing; as adj., some*.
 aliter, adv., *otherwise*.
 aliter . . . ac (atque), adv. phrase, *otherwise than*.
 alius, -a, -ud, adj., *other, another*.
 Allobrogēs, -um, m., *the Allobroges*.
 Alpes, -ium, m. pl., *the Alps*.
 alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two)*.
 altitūdō, -dinis, f., *height, depth*.
 altus, -a, -um, adj. (of vertical extent), *high, deep*.
 Ambarri, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambarri*.
 āmentia, -ae, f., *folly*.
 amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.
 amicus, -ī, m., *friend*.
 amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.
 āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *lose*.
 amō, I, *love*.
 amor, -ōris, m., *love*.
 amplius, adv., *more*.
 an, interrog. particle, *or; whether*.
 anceps, -cipitis, adj., *double, two-fold; doubtful*.
 angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., *narrow pass*.
 angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, steep*.
 animadvertō, -ere, -ī, -rsum, *give attention to; notice; punish*.
 animus, -ī, m., *mind; disposition; feelings; courage*.
 annus, -ī, m., *year*.
 annuus, -a, -um, adj., *ANNUAL; for a year*.
 ante, prep. w. acc. and adv., *before (of time or space)*.
 antea, adv., *before, previously*.
 antiquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient; former*.
 apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open*.
 appellō, I, *call; name*.
 apud, prep. w. acc., *among; near*.
 Aquileia, -ae, f., *Aquileia*.
 Aquitāni, -ōrum, m., *the Aquitani*.
 Arar, -aris (acc., -im), m., *the Arar*.
 arbitror, I, dep., *think, judge*.
 arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.
 arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *call, summon*.
 Ariovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*.
 arma, -ōrum, m. pl., *arms, weapons*.
 armō, I, *ARM, equip*.
 ascendō, -ere, -ī, -usum, *ASCEND, climb*.
 ascensus, -ūs, m., *ASCENT*.
 at, conj., *but*.
 atque, conj. (cf. ac), *and, and also; as*.
 Atrebātēs, -um, m., *the Atrebates*.
 auctōritās, -tātis, f., *AUTHORITY*.
 audācia, -ae, f., *AUDACITY, boldness*.
 audācter, adv., *boldly*.
 audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep., *dare*.
 audiō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *hear*.
 augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, strengthen*.
 aut, conj., *or*.
 aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.
 autem, conj., *but, however*.
 auxilium, -ī (-ū), n., *aid; pl. AUXILIARIES (irregular troops)*.
 ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -rsum, *turn away; AVERT*.

B.

- barbarus, -ī, m., *BARBARIAN*.
 barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *BARBAROUS*.
 Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgae*.
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike*.
 bellō, I, *make war*.
 bellum, -ī, n., *war*.
 bene, adv., *well*.
 beneficium, -ī (-iī), n., *BENEFIT, favor*.

Bibrax, -actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town.
 biduum, -ī, n., *two days*.
 biennium, -ī (-iū), n., *two years*.
 bipartitō, adv., *in two divisions*.
 Boii, -ōrum, m., *the Boii*.
 bona, -ōrum, n., pl. *goods*.
 bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good*.
 Britannia, -ae, f., *BRITAIN*.

C.

C., abbreviation for *Caius*.
 cadō, -ere, cecidī, casum, *fall*.
 Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.
 calamitās, -tātis, f., *CALAMITY, disaster*.
 capiō, -ere, -cēpī, captum, CAPTURE, *take*.
 captivus, -ī, m., *CAPTIVE*.
 caput, -itis, n., *head*.
 Carnūtēs, -um, m., *the Carnutes*.
 carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*.
 Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., *with Cassius*.
 castellum, -ī, n., *fort, redoubt*.
 Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus*.
 castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*.
 cāsus, -ūs, m., *chance*.
 causa, -ae, f., *CAUSE; reason*.
 causā, abl., *for the sake of*.
 caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on the watch*.
 cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, *yield*.
 celer, -eris, -e, adj., *quick, swift*.
 celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed*.
 celeriter, adv., *quickly, swiftly*.
 Celtae, -ārum, m., *the Celts*.
 census, -ūs, m., *CENSUS*.
 centum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred*.
 centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*.
 certē, adv., *surely, CERTAINLY*.
 certus, -a, -um, adj., *CERTAIN; certiorē facere, to inform; certior fieri, to be informed*.
 Ceutrōnēs, -um, m., *the Ceutrones*.
 cibāria, -ōrum, n. pl., *grain, supplies*.
 circiter, adv., *about*.
 circuitus, -ūs, m., *CIRCUIT*.
 circum, prep. w. acc., *around*.
 circum-veniō, -īre, -ī, -tum, *surround*.

cis, prep. w. acc., and adv., *on this side of*.
 citerior, -ius, adj., *hither, nearer*.
 citrā. See *cis*.
 civis, -is, m., *citizen*.
 civitās, -tātis, f., *state; citizenship*.
 clāmor, -ōris, m., *CLAMOR, shouting*.
 claudō, -ere, clausī, -sum, *CLOSE, close up*.
 cliēns, -ntis, m., *vassal*.
 co-ēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy up*.
 coepī, -isse, pret. vb., *began*.
 co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *control, COERCE*.
 cōgitō, I, *think, reflect*.
 cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *learn, RECOGNIZE; pret. pf. cognōvī, I know*.
 cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactum, *compel; collect*.
 cohors, -rtis, f., *cohort*.
 co-hortor, I, dep., *exhort, encourage*.
 col-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, *COLLECT*.
 collis, -is, m., *hill*.
 collocō, I, *place, station*.
 colloquium, -ī (-iū), n., *conference*.
 col-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus, *confer, converse*.
 com-b-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *burn*.
 commēātus, -ūs, m., *supplies*.
 com-memorō, I, *mention*.
 com-meō, I, *visit, resort to*.
 com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *entrust, COMMIT; act; blunder*.
 proelium committere, *join battle*.
 commōdē, adv., *with ease, conveniently*.
 commodus, -a, -um, adj., *advantageous*.
 com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move; excite; induce*.
 com-muniō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), itum, *fortify*.
 communis, -e, adj., *COMMON*.
 commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change*.
 com-mūtō, I, *change*.
 com-parō, I, *prepare, secure*.
 com-periō, -īre, -ī, -rtum, *find out*.

com-plector, -ī, -plexus, dep., *embrace*.

com-pleō, -ere, plēvī, -ētum, *fill*.

complūrēs, -a, adj., pl., *very many*.

com-portō, I, *bring together*.

con-, the form assumed by cum in composition.

cōnātum, -ī, n., *attempt*.

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt*.

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, CONCEDE; *grant; yield*.

con-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down, slay*.

con-ciliō, I, *secure, win*.

concilium, -ī (-iī), n., *council*.

concursum, -ūs, m., *assembling*.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *CONDITION*.

con-dōnō, I, *CONDONE, excuse*.

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *bring together; hire*.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring together; defer; sē cōferre, betake one's self*.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, crowded*.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish; exhaust; furnish; make*.

cōn-fidō, -ere, -fisus, semi-dep., CONFIDE, *trust in; believe*.

cōn-firmō, I, *CONFIRM; assert*.

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *hurl, throw*.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy*.

con-iūrō, I, *swear, conspire*.

cōnor, I, dep., *attempt, try*.

con-quirō, -ere, -quisivī, -sītum, *search out*.

cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītum, *resolve on; sibi mortem cōn-sciscere, commit suicide*.

cōnscius, -a, -um, adj., *CONSCIOUS, aware*.

cōn-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrip-tum, *enlist*.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *CONSENT*.

cōn-sequor, -quī, -cūtus, *overtake; attain*.

cōn-servō, I, *preserve*.

Cōnsidius, -ī (-iī), m., *Considius*.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *encamp*.

cōnsilium, -ī (-iī), n., *plan, design, COUNSEL; assembly*.

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand; make a stand, stand one's ground; CONSIST; depend on*.

cōn-solor, I, dep., *CONSOLE*.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight*.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *see*.

cōn-spīcor, I, dep., *observe*.

cōn-stat, -āre, -stitit, *impers., it is evident*.

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *station; decide*.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *grow accustomed; pret. pf. cōn-suēvī, I am accustomed*.

cōnsul, -is, m., *consul*.

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sump-tum, *CONSUME*.

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., *CONTEMPT*.

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tentum, *CONTEND; hasten*.

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *quarrel, strife*.

continenter, adv., *continuously*.

con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold back or in check; hem in; confine; bound (geographically)*.

con-tingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, *touch; happen*.

contrā, prep. w. acc., and adv., *against; on the other hand*.

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult*.

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come together; meet; CONVENE*.

conventus, -ūs, m., *assembly; court*.

con-vertō, -ere, -ī, -rsum, *turn*.

con-vocō, I, *call together, summon*.

cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance; pl., troops*.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army)*.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily*.

cotīdiē, adv., *daily*.

Cotta, -ae, m., *Cotta*.

Crassus, -ā, m., *Crassus*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent*.

cremō, I, *burn*.

creō, I, *CREATE, elect*.

crescō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *increase, grow strong.*

cultus, -ūs, m., *CULTURE.*

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

cum, conj., *when; since, because; although.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, f., *avarice, desire.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *fond of, eager for.*

cur, adv., *why?*

cūrō, I, *care for; w. gndv., to have a thing done.*

cursus, -ūs, m., *running; course.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guardian.*

D.

damnō, I, *CONDEMN.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *about, concerning; from, down from; during; for.*

debeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe; w. inf., ought.*

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *DECREE, decide.*

dē-certō, I, *fight, fight to a finish.*

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*

dē-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *DECEIVE.*

dē-ditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *surrender.*

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *conduct, lead.*

dē-fendō, -ere, -ī, -nsum, *DE-FEND.*

dē-fensiō, -ōnis, f., *DEFENSE.*

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *report.*

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *exhausted.*
dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail; revolt.*

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *dis-lodge, throw down; disappoint.*

deinde, adv., *then, next.*

dē-liberō, I, *DELIBERATE.*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, *choose.*

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *DIMINISH.*

dēmum, adv., *at length.*

denique, adv., *finally; at least.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay down, lay aside.*

dē-signō, I, *indicate, DESIGNATE.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *cease, DESIST.*

dē-spērō, I, *DESPAIR.*

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *DESPISE.*

dē-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *abandon.*

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *fail, be wanting.*

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten; DETER, prevent.*

dē-trimentum, -ī, n., *loss, injury.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right; as subst., dextra, the right hand.*

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, *say, tell, appoint.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f., *pleading.*

diēs, -ēi, m. (rarely f.), *day.*

dif-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, *DIFFER.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *DIFFICULT.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *DIFFICULTY.*

dignitās, -tātis, f., *DIGNITY.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully, DILIGENTLY.*

diligentia, -ae, f., *DILIGENCE.*

dimicō, I, *fight.*

dimidium, -ī (-iī), n., *a half.*

dimittō, -ere, -misī, -missum, *lose; DISMISS.*

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *depart.*

discessus, -ūs, m., *departure.*

discō, -ere, didici, —, *learn.*

dis-iciō, -ere -iēcī, -iectum, *scatter, rout.*

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *DISPOSE, station.*

diū, adv., *a long time, long.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj., *long continued.*

Diviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus.*

Divicō, -ōnis, m., *Divico.*

dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -vīsum, *DIVIDE.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *teach, show.*

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *suffer, be grieved.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief; discontent.*
 domicilium, -ī (-iī), n., *home.*
 domus, -ūs, f., *house, home.*
 donec, conj., *until.*
 dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*
 dubitātiō, -ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*
 dubitō, I, DOUBT.
 dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful;*
nōn est dubium, there is no doubt.
 ducenti, -ae, -a, pl. adj., *two*
hundred.
 dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead,*
haul.
 dum, conj., *while; until.*
 dummodo, conj., *provided that,*
with subjunc.
 Dumnorix, -īgis, m., *Dumnorix.*
 duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*
 duodecim, indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*
 duodēviginti, indecl. num. adj.,
eighteen.
 duplicō, I, DOUBLE.
 dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E.

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., *from, out of, of.*
 Eburōnēs, -um, m., *the Eburones.*
 ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead*
out.
 effeminō, I, *weaken.*
 ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum,
carry away; ELATE.
 ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish,*
render, EFFECT, bring about.
 ego, mei, pers. pron., *I.*
 ē-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, *go out.*
 ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *remarkable.*
 ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw*
out; sē ēicere, rush out.
 ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *hurl,*
discharge.
 emō, -ere, -ēmī, emptum, *buy.*
 enim, conj., *for (cannot begin a*
clause).
 ē-nūntiō, I, ANNOUNCE.
 eō, ire, ivī (-iī), itum, *go, march.*
 eō, adv., *thither, there.*
 eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
 eques, -itis, m., *horseman; pl.,*
cavalry.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
 equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
 ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum, *take*
away, rescue.
 et, conj., *and; also; even.*
 et . . . et, both . . . and.
 etiam, conj., *also, even.*
 etsī, conj., *although, though.*
 ex. See ē.
 ex-citō, I, EXCITE, *urge on; construct.*
 exemplum, -ī, n., *EXAMPLE.*
 ex-eō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *go out.*
 exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *training, EX-*
ERCISE.
 exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*
 ex-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum, *drive*
out; (of time) end.
 existimātiō, -ōnis, f., *opinion,*
ESTIMATE.
 ex-istimō, I, *think, consider.*
 expeditus, -a, -um, adj., *unencumb-*
ered.
 ex-igō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive*
out, EXPEL.
 ex-perior, -īri, -pertus, dep., *try,*
test.
 explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout; spy.*
 ex-plōrō, I, *examine, find out,*
EXPLORE.
 ex-pugnō, I, *take by storm.*
 ex-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep.,
follow up.
 ex-spectō, I, *await, EXPECT.*
 extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *EXTREME,*
outmost; end of.

F.

facile, adv., *easily.*
 facilis, -e, adj., *easy.*
 faciō, -ere, -fēcī, factum, *make, do.*
 factum, -ī, n., *deed.*
 facultās, -tātis, f., *supply; oppor-*
tunity.
 fāma, -ae, f., *FAME, report, news.*
 famēs, -is, f., *hunger, FAMINE.*
 familia, -ae, f., *household (includ-*
ing slaves).
 familiāris, -e, adj., *of the family,*
private; rēs familiāris, private
property, fortune.
 faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *FAVOR.*

ferē, adv., *almost*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, BEAR, carry;
bring; endure.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *savage, wild*.

fidēs, -eī, f., *faith; protection;*
allegiance; pledge.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

filius, -ī (-iī), m., *son*.

finis, -is, m., *end, boundary; pl.,*
territories.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighbor-*
ing, near; as subst., neighbor.

fiō, fieri, factus (pass. of faciō),
become, be made; happen.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., FIRM,
strong.

flāgitō, I, *demand*.

fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep*.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.

fluō, -ere, flūxi, flūxum, FLOW.

fore, fut. inf. of sum.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery*.

fortūna, -ae, f., FORTUNE.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, moat*.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj., *brotherly*.

frīgus, -oris, n., *cold*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., *per-*
taining to grain; fertile; rēs frū-
mentāria, supplies.

frūmentor, I, dep., *forage*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain; pl.,*
crops.

frustrā, adv., *in vain*.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, *flee*.

fugitivus, -ī, m., *deserter*.

furor, -ōris, m., FURY, *madness*.

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. ptc. of sum.

G.

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.

Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*.

gens, gentis, f., *tribe, clan*.

genus, -eris, f., *kind, stock*.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German;*
as subst., a German; pl., the
Germans.

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, *carry;*
carry on; bellum gerere, wage
war.

gladius, -ī (-iī), m., *sword*.

glōria, -ae, f., GLORY.

glōrior, I, dep., *boast*.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.

grātia, -ae, f., *influence, popularity;*
pl., thanks.

gratulor, I, dep., CONGRATULATE.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe*.

graviter, adv., *severely, seriously*.

H.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, HAVE, *hold;*
regard; deliver (a speech).

Haedui, -ōrum, *the Haedui*.

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., *Haeduan*.

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii*.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian*.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter*
quarters.

Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland*.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., *this*.

hic, adv., *here*.

hiemō, I, *pass the winter*.

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.

homō, -minis, m., *man, mankind*.

honor, -ōris, m., HONOR.

hortor, I, dep., EXHORT, *urge*.

hostis, -is, m., *enemy*.

hūc, adv., *hither, here*.

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., HUMANITY;
refinement.

humilis, -e, adj., *lowly, HUMBLE*.

I.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, *throw,*
hurl.

iactō, I, *hurl; discuss*.

iam, adv., *now, at last, already*.

ibi, adv., *there*.

Iccius, -ī (-iī), m., *Iccius*.

ictus, -ūs, m., *blow, stroke*.

idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron.,
the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable*.

ignis, -is, m., *fire*.

ignōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace*.
 ignōrō, I, *be* IGNORANT of, *not know*.
 ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that*.
 immortalis, -ē, adj., IMMORTAL.
 impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*;
 pl., *baggage*.
 im-pediō, -ire, -īvi (-iī), -itum,
 IMPEDE, *hinder*.
 impeditus, -a, -um, adj., *encum-*
 bered.
 im-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum,
 IMPEL, *urge*.
 im-pendeō, -ēre, —, —, IM-
 PEND, *overhang*.
 imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander*.
 imperium, -ī (-iī), n., *command*;
 control; *government*.
 imperō, I, *command, order*.
 impetrō, I, *obtain* (a request).
 impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*; *impetum*
 facere in, make an attack upon.
 im-plōrō, I, *beg, implore*.
 im-portō, I, *bring in*; IMPORT.
 imprōvisō, adv., *unexpectedly*.
 impūne, adv., *with IMPUNITY*.
 impunitās, -tātis, f., IMPUNITY.
 imus, -a, -um, adj. See *īnfimus*.
 in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; of mo-
 tion, w. acc., *into, to, against*,
 towards: of position, w. abl., *in*,
 on, among.
 in-cendō, -ere, -ndī, nsum, *set fire*
 to, burn.
 in-citō, I, INCITE, *urge on*.
 incola, -ae, m., *inhabitant*.
 in-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum, *inhabit*,
 dwel.
 incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed*.
 incommodum, -ī, n., *disaster, re-*
 verse.
 incredibilis, -e, adj., INCREDIBLE.
 inde, adv., *thence*; *then, next*.
 in-dūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, *lead*
 in; INDUCE.
 in-eō, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -itum, *enter*;
 begin; cōsiliū inīre, *form a*
 plan.
 inferior, -ius, adj., *lower, inferior*.
 in-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -illātum, *bring*
 in, bring upon; bellum inferre,
 w. dat., *make war upon*.
 īnfimus, -a, -um, adj., *lowest, foot of*.

infirmus, -a, -um, adj., *weak*.
 in-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxum, *flow*
 into.
 ingēns, -ntis, adj., *very great*,
 enormous.
 inimicus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile*; as
 subst., *personal enemy*.
 inīquus, -a, -um, adj., *unjust, un-*
 fair.
 initium, -ī (-iī), n., *beginning*.
 iniūria, -ae, f., INJURY.
 inōpia, -ae, f., *scarcity*.
 inopināns, -ntis, adj., *unexpected*.
 in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *pur-*
 sue.
 insidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush, plot*.
 insignis, -e, adj., *notable*.
 insolenter, adv., INSOLENTLY.
 in-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *ap-*
 point, set up; INSTITUTE; *train*.
 institūtum, -ī, n., *plan, decision*;
 INSTITUTION.
 in-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *press*
 on; *approach*.
 in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,
 draw up, arrange.
 insula, -ae, f., *island*.
 intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *know*,
 understand.
 inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among*.
 inter-cedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,
 go between, lie between.
 inter-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,
 cut off.
 interdiū, adv., *by day*.
 interdum, adv., *sometimes*.
 intereā, adv., *meanwhile*.
 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill*,
 put to death.
 interim, adv., *meanwhile*.
 inter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum,
 cease, interrupt; *intervene*.
 interneciō, -ōnis, f., *destruction*.
 inter sē, reciprocal pron., *each*
 other.
 inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,
 be between; *take part in*; *interest*,
 impers., it concerns.
 intervallum, -ī, n., INTERVAL.
 in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,
 come upon, find (by chance).
 in-videō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, ENVY.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*.
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron.,
 intens., *self*.
 is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that*;
 he, she, it.
 iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., *that*,
 that of yours.
 ita, adv., *so, thus*.
 itaque, conj., *accordingly*.
 item, adv., *likewise*.
 iter, itineris, n., *road, march, right*
 of way.
 iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, *order*,
 command.
 iudicium, -ī (iī), n., *trial*.
 iudicō, I, JUDGE, *decide*.
 iugum, -ī, n., *ridge; yoke*.
 Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*.
 iumentum, -ī, n., *pack animal*.
 iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, *join*.
 Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura mountains*.
 iūrō, I, *swear*.
 iūs, iūris, n., *right, law*.
 iūs iurandum, cpd., both parts
 decl.; gen., iūris iurandī, n., *oath*.
 iūstitia, -ae, f., JUSTICE.
 iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iutum, *assist*.

L.

L., abbreviation for *Lucius*.
 Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus*.
 labor, -ōris, m., LABOR, *hardship*.
 lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, *harass*.
 lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*.
 lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE.
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone*.
 largior, -iri, -itus, dep., *bribe*.
 latē, adv., *widely*.
 lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *escape notice*,
 be hidden.
 lātitudō, -inis, f., *width*.
 Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., *the Latobrigi*.
 latus, -eris, n., *side; flank*.
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide*.
 lātus, pf. pte. of ferō.
 laudō, I, *praise*.
 laus, laudis, f., *praise*.
 lēgatiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy*.
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy; lieutenant*.
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., *legionary*.
 Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lemannus*,
 ancient name of Lake Geneva.
 lēnitās, -tātis, f., *gentleness*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.
 liberālītās, -tātis, f., LIBERALITY.
 liberē, adv., *freely*.
 liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*.
 liberō, I, LIBERATE, *set free*.
 libertās, -tātis, f., LIBERTY.
 liceor, -ērī, -itus, dep., *bid* (at auc-
 tion).
 licet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is per-*
 mitted, one may.
 Lingonēs, -um (acc. -as), m., *the*
 Lingones.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue*, LANGUAGE.
 linter, -tris, m., *skiff*.
 Liscus, -ī, m., *Liscus*.
 litterae, -ārum, f. pl., LETTER, the
 sing. means a letter of the alpha-
 bet.
 litus, -oris, n., *shore*.
 locus, -ī, m.; pl. loca, n., *place*.
 longē, adv., *far; by far*.
 longitūdō, -inis, f., *length*.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG.
 loquor, loquī, locūtus, dep., *speak*,
 say.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light*; primā lūce, *at*
dawn.

M.

M., abbreviation for *Marcus*.
 magis, adv., *more*; comp. of mag-
 nopere.
 magistrātus, -ūs, m., MAGISTRATE.
 magnitūdō, -dinis, f., *size*.
 magnopere, adv., *greatly*.
 māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great*.
 māior, māius, adj., *greater*; comp.
 of magnus.
 māiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *ancestors*.
 male, adv., *badly*.
 malefīcium, -ī (-iī), n., *mischievous*,
 damage.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *prefer*.
 malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad*.
 mandātum, -ī, n., *order, instruc-*
 tions.
 mandō, I, *charge, entrust*.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, sum, REMAIN.
manus, -ūs, f., hand; band (of armed men).

mare, maris, n., sea.

māter, -tris, f., mother.

mātrimōnium, -ī (-īi), n., marriage.

mātūrō, I, hasten.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, MATURE.

maximē, adv., very greatly, especially; superl. of magnopere.

maximus, -a, -um, adj., greatest, very great; superl. of magnus.

mediocriter, adv., moderately.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, middle of.

melior, -ius, adj., better; comp. of bonus.

memoria, -ae, f., MEMORY.

Menapii, -ōrum, m., the Menapii.

mēns, mentis, f., mind.

mēnsis, -is, m., month.

mercātor, -ōris, m., MERCHANT, trader.

mereor, -ēri, -itus, dep., deserve, MERIT.

meritum, -ī, n., MERIT.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. and adj., my, mine.

miles, -itis, m., soldier.

militāris, -e, adj., MILITARY; rēs militāris, military matters, the art of war.

mille, num. adj., thousand; pl.,

milīa, n. noun, thousands.

minimē, adv., least, by no means.

minus, -a, -um, adj., least; superl. of parvus.

minor, -us, adj., less; comp. of parvus.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, DIMINISH.

minus, adv., less.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., MISERABLE.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send.

modo, adv., only; just; just now; conj., provided that, with subjunc.

modus, -ī, m., manner; kind; ēius modī, of such a kind.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, grind.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, advise, warn.

mōns, montis, m., MOUNTAIN.

Morini, -ōrum, m., the Morini.

morior, morī, mortuus (fut. ptc. moritūrus), dep., die.

moror, I, dep., delay, linger.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom; pl. character.

Mosa, -ae, m., the Mosa river (Meuse).

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, MOVE.

mulier, -eris, f., woman.

multitūdō, -inis, f., great number, MULTITUDE.

multō, adv., much, by far.

multus, -a, -um, adj., much; pl. many.

mūniō, -ire, -īvī (-īi), -itum, fortify.

mūnitō, -ōnis, f., fortification.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall.

N.

nam, conj., for.

Nammēius, -ī, m., Nammeius.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, dep., be born, arise.

nātūra, -ae, f., NATURE.

nauta, -ae, m., sailor.

nāvālis, -e, adj., NAVAL.

nāvigō, I, sail, NAVIGATE.

nāvis, -is, f., ship; nāvis longa, war ship.

-ne, interrog. particle, enclitic; asks information.

nē, conj., not; lest; that . . . not; from (after vbs. of hindering):

nē . . . quidem (with emphatic word between), not even.

nec (neque), conj., nor, and . . . not.

nec . . . nec (neque . . . neque), neither . . . nor.

necessāriō, adv., NECESSARILY.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., NECESSARY; as subst., an associate.

necesse, adj., indecl., NECESSARY.

necō, I, kill, slay.

nēgō, I, deny, say . . . not, refuse.

negōtium, -I (-iī), n., *business, task*.
 nēmō, defective; dat. *nēmīni*, acc.
nēminem, other cases wanting,
no one.

neque. See nec.

Nervii, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii*.

neuter, -tra- trum, adj., *neither*
(of two).

nēve (also neu), conj., *and not, nor*.

nihil, indecl., n., *nothing*.

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing*; nihilō, abl.
 deg. of diff., *by nothing, not at all*;

nihilō minus, *none the less*.

nītor, -ī, nīxus or nīsus, dep.,
strive; rely on.

nōbilis, -e, adj., *NOBLE*.

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *NOBILITY*.

noctū, adv., *by night*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *not to wish*,
be unwilling.

nōmen, -inis, n., *NAME*.

nōminātim, adv., *by name*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōndum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnne, interrog. particle, expects
answer yes.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some*.

nōnnumquam, adv., *sometimes*.

nōs, pl. of ego.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and
 pron., *our, ours*.

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine*.

novissimus, -a, -um, adj., *the last*;
 as subst., *the rear, those on the*
rear; novissimum agmen, *the*
rear of the column.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new*; novae
 rēs, *revolution, political change*.

nox, noctis, f., *NIGHT*.

nūdō, I, *strip, lay bare*.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, unde-*
fended.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *no*.

num, interrog. particle, expects
answer no.

numerus, -i, m., *NUMBER, quantity*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nūntiō, I, *ANNOUNCE, report, tell*.

nūntius, -ī (-iī), m., *messenger*;
message.

nūper, adv., *lately*.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

ob-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw
forward.

ob-liviscor, -ī, oblitus, dep., *forget*.

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege; oppression*.

ob-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold;
 OBTAIN.

occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting*; sōlis

occāsus, *sunset*.

oc-cidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, kill,
slay.

occisus, pf. ptc. of occidō.

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *eight*
hundred.

oc-cultō, I, *conceal*.

occultō, adv., *in secret*.

oc-cupō, I, OCCUPY, seize, hold.

Ocelum, -i, n., *Ocelum*.

octō, indecl. num. adj., *EIGHT*.

oculus, -i, m., *eye*.

ōdī, odisse, pret. vb., *hate*.

of-fendō, -ere, -ī, -nsum, OFFEND.

offensiō, -ōnis, f., *OFFENSE*.

of-ferō, -ferre, obtulī, oblatum,
 OFFER.

officium, -ī (-iī), n., *duty*.

omninō, adv., *only*.

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every*; n. pl.
 omnia as subst., *everything*.

onus, -eris, n., *burden, load*.

opiniō, -ōnis, f., *OPINION*.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *one*
must, one ought.

oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., OPPOR-
 TUNE, *favorable*.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *siege*.

op-pugnō, I, *besiege, assault*.

ops, opis, f., *power, help*; pl.,
resources, assistance.

optimē, adv., *best*; superl. of
 bene.

optimus, -a, -um, adj., *best*; superl.
 of bonus.

opus, -eris, n., *work*.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, ORATION*.

ordō, -inis, m., *order, arrangement*;
rank; pl. ordinēs, *the ranks*.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., *Orgetorix*.

orō, I, *beg, pray.*

os-tendō, -ere, -ī, -ntum, *show, point out.*

P.

P., abbreviation for *Publius.*

pācō, I, *PACIFY, subdue.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *canton, district.*

par, -is, adj., *equal.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj., *ready, prepared.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *obey.*

parō, I, *PREPARE; procure.*

pars, partis, f., *part.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small.*

passus, -ūs, m., *PACE; mille passūs, a MILE.*

patēns, -ntis, adj. pr. pte. of pateō, *open.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be open, extend.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

patior, pati, passus, *suffer; permit.*

paucī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., *few.*

paulātim, adv., *gradually.*

paulō, adv., *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *PEACE.*

pedes, -itis, m., *foot soldier; pl., infantry.*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive; rout; banish.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of; through the agency of; during.*

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead through, construct.*

perfacilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *endure.*

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, PERFECT, accomplish, bring about.*

per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum, *break through.*

perfuga, -ae, m., *deserter.*

per-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -itum, *flee for safety.*

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous.*

periculum, -ī, n., *danger.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilled in.*

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *remain.*

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *arouse, excite, alarm.*

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *ruin.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through.*

per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., *follow up, pursue.*

per-sevērō, I, *PERSEVERE.*

per-solvō, -ere, -vī, -solūtum, *pay.*

per-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *perceive, understand.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *PERSUADE.*

per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *TER-RIFY.*

per-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *PER-TAIN, tend to; extend.*

per-turbō, I, *DISTURB, alarm.*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *seek, request.*

phalanx, -angis, f., *phalanx.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *spear.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people.*

plūrēs, -a, adj., *more; too many; pl. of plūs.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., *most; very much; superl. of multus; plūrimum posse, to be very powerful.*

plūs, plūris, n., adj., *more; comp. of multus.*

poena, -ae, f., *penalty.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus, dep., *promise.*

pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *place, put, establish; castra pōnere, pitch camp.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populor, I, dep., *ravage.*

populus, -ī, m., *people (in national sense).*

porta, -ae, f., *gate.*

portō, I, *carry.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, PORT.*

poscō, -ere, poposci, —, *demand.*

possessiō, -ōnis, f., POSSESSION.
 possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can.
 post, prep. w. acc. and adv., after, behind.
 postea, adv., afterward.
 posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next.
 postquam, conj., after.
 postridiē, adv., on the next day.
 postulō, I, demand.
 potentia, -ae, f., power, influence.
 potestās, -tātis, f., power; opportunity; permission.
 potior, -iri, -itus, dep., get possession of.
 prae, prep. w. abl., in comparison with; on account of.
 prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, PRECEDE, excel.
 prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, direct, order.
 praeda, -ae, f., plunder.
 praefectus, -ī, m., prefect (an officer).
 prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, put in command of.
 prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send forward.
 praesēns, -ntis, adj., PRESENT.
 praesertim, adv., especially.
 praesidium, -ī (-ii), n., garrison; protection.
 prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, perform; show; excel: praestat, impers., it is better.
 prae-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be in command of.
 praeter, prep. w. acc., except; contrary to, beyond.
 praeterea, adv., besides.
 praeteritus, -a, -um, adj., past; n. pl. praeterita as subst., the past.
 praeterquam, adv., besides, except.
 premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, PRESS hard; oppress.
 prendō, -ere, -ī, -usum, grasp.
 pretium, -ī (-ii), n., PRICE.
 prex, precis, f. (usually pl.), prayers, entreaties.
 pridīē, adv., the day before.

primō, adv., at first.
 primum, adv., first.
 primus, -a, -um, adj., first; superl. from prae or prō.
 princeps, -ipis, adj., first; as subst., chief, leader.
 principātus, -ūs, m., supremacy.
 prior, prius, adj., former; comp. from prae or prō.
 pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former, previous.
 priusquam, conj., before.
 privātum, adv., PRIVATELY.
 privātus, -a, -um, adj., PRIVATE; as subst., a private citizen.
 prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front; for; instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.
 probō, I, approve; PROVE.
 prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, PROCEED, go forward.
 prō-dō, -ere, -dicti, -ditum, betray, give up.
 Procillus, -ī, m., Procillus.
 proelium, -ī (-ii), n., battle.
 profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.
 proficiscor, -ī, -fectus, dep., set out.
 prō-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -itum, flee, escape.
 prōgredior, -dī, -gressus, dep., advance.
 pro-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prevent, PROHIBIT; keep out.
 prō-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw forward; throw away; prostrate.
 prope, prep. w. acc. and adv., near; almost, nearly.
 prō-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive away, REPEL.
 propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near.
 propius, adv. and prep., nearer.
 prō-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, set forth.
 propter, prep. w. acc., on account of.
 propterea, adv., for this reason.
 propterea quod, cpd. conj., because.
 prō-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look out for, provide for.
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, -fūturus, benefit, be an advantage.
 prōvincia, -ae, f., PROVINCE.

proximē, adv., *nearest, next; lately*;
superl. of *prope*.
proximus, -a, -um, adj., *nearest*;
superl. from *prope*.
publicē, adv., *PUBLICLY, in the*
name of the state.
publicus, -a, -um, adj., *PUBLIC*.
pudor, -ōris, m., *sense of honor*;
shame.
puer, -erī, m., *boy*.
pugna, -ae, f., *fight*.
pugnō, I, *fight*.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beauti-*
ful.
purgātus, -a, -um, adj., *guiltless,*
clear.
putō, I, *think, suppose*.

Q.

Q., abbreviation for *Quintus*.
quā, adv., *where, by which way*.
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
forty.
quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,
four hundred.
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, -sītum,
seek, INQUIRE.
quaestor, -ōris, m., *quaestor*.
quālis, -e, adj. rel. and interrog.,
as, such as; of what sort.
quam, conj., *than*.
quam, adv., *how, as; w. superl.,*
as possible: quam primum, as
soon as possible.
quam ob rem, *on which account,*
wherefore.
quandō, adv., *when*.
quantō, adv., correl. w. tantō, *as,*
by how much.
quantopere, adv., *how greatly, how*
much.
quantus, -a, -um, adj., rel. and
interrog., *as great as; how great;*
how much.
quārē (often quā rē), adv., rel. and
interrog., *wherefore, why*.
quartus, -a, -um, adj., *fourth*.
quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four*.
-que, conj., enclitic, *and*.
queror, -i, questus, dep., *com-*
plain.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who,*
which, what.
quicumque, quaecumque, quod-
cumque, rel. indef. pron., *who-*
ever, whatever.
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, or
quoddam, indef. pron. and adj.,
a certain one, certain.
quidem, adv., *indeed, even; nē*
. . . quidem, not even.
quīn, conj., *that, but that; from;*
quīn etiam, moreover, indeed.
quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., *fif-*
teen.
quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five*
hundred.
quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five*.
quīntus, -a, -um, adj., *fifth*.
quis (quī), quae, quid (quod),
interrog. pron. and adj., *who,*
which, what.
quis (quī), qua (quae), quid
(quod), indef. pron. and adj.
used only after *sī, nē, num, any*
one, any.
quisquam, —, quicquam, indef.
pron., *any one, any thing*.
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quod-
que), indef. pron. and adj., *each*
one, each.
quō, adv., *whither, where*.
quō, rel. conj. w. compar., *in*
order that, that.
quoad, conj., *as long as; w. sub-*
junc., until.
quod, conj., *because*.
quōminus, conj., *that . . . not,*
from (lit., by which the less).
quondam, adv., *formerly, once*.
quoniam, conj., *since, because*.
quoque, conj., *also*.

R.

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root; base of a moun-*
tain.
ratiō, -ōnis, f., *plan; reason;*
list, count.
ratis, -is, f., *raft*.
Rauracī, -ōrum, m., *the Rauraci*.
rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *REBELLION*.
recēs, -ntis, adj., *RECENT*.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, RE-
CEIVE; sē recipere, *recover* (from
panic); *retreat*; *betake one's self*.
re-cūsō, I, *refuse*.
red-dō, -ere, -reddidī, -itum, *give*
back; *render*.
red-eō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum,
return.
red-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce*;
render.
red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum,
buy, *buy up*; *ransom*, REDEEM.
redintegrō, I, *renew*.
reditiō, -ōnis, f., *return*.
re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead*
back.
re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum,
bring back; *report*; *pedem referre*,
retreat.
regiō, -ōnis, f., REGION.
regnum, -ī, n., *kingdom*.
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule*.
re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *hurl*
back, *repulse*.
relātus, pf. ptc. of referō.
relictus, pf. ptc. of relinquo.
re-linquo, -ere, -līquī, -lictum,
leave, *abandon*.
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining*,
left; *rest of*.
Rēmī, -ōrum, m., *the Remi*.
re-minīscor, -ī, —, *remember*,
recollect.
re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,
move, REMOVE.
re-nūntiō, I, *report*.
re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum,
REPEL, REPULSE.
repentinus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden*.
re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertum,
find (by search).
re-prehendō, -ere, -ī, -nsum, *blame*.
re-pugnō, I, *oppose*.
rēs, rei, f., *thing*, *affair*, *circum-*
stance; pl. often *property*; rēs
militaris, *art of war*; rēs novae,
revolution; rēs publica, *the State*,
the REPUBLIC.
re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum,
destroy.
re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, RE-
SIST.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,
look back; *consider*.
re-spondeō, -ēre, -ndī, -nsum, an-
swer, RESPOND.
re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *renew*,
restore.
re-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold*
back; RETAIN.
re-vertor, -ī, -vertī (act), -versus,
semi-dep., *return*.
re-vocō, I, *call back*.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*.
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*.
ripa, -ae, f., *bank of a river*.
rogō, I, *ask*.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*;
as subst., *a Roman*; pl., *the*
Romans.
rūmor, -ōris, m., RUMOR.
rūrsus (contr. for reversus), adv.,
again; *back*.

S.

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.
Santonēs, -um, or Santonī, -ōrum,
the Santones.
sarcina, -ae, f., *pack*.
satis, indecl. noun, *enough*.
satis, adv., *sufficiently*, *somewhat*.
satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum,
SATISFY, *make reparation*.
scelus, -eris, n., *wickedness*, *crime*.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know*.
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.
sē. See *sui*.
sēcrētō, adv., *in SECRET*; *privately*.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *second*;
successful, *prosperous*.
sed, conj., *but*.
sēdecim, indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.
Segūsiāvī, -ōrum, m., *the Segusiani*.
sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing*, *planting*.
semper, adv., *always*.
senātus, -ūs, m., SENATE.
senex, senis, m., *old man*.
sēparātīm, adv., SEPARATELY.
septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh*.

sepultūra, -ae, f., *burial*.
 Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian*;
 as subst., *a Sequanian*; pl., *the Sequani*.
 sequor, sequi, secūtus, dep., *follow*.
 servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery*, **SERVITUDE**.
 servus, -ī, m., *slave*.
 seu. See *sive*.
 sex, indecl. num. adj., *SIX*.
 sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.
 sī, conj., *if; whether*.
 sic, adv., *thus, so, as follows*.
 signum, -ī, m., *SIGNAL*; *standard*.
 silva, -ae, f., *forest*.
 similis, -e, adj., *like*, **SIMILAR**.
 simul, adv., *at the same time, at once*; simul atque (ac), conj., *as soon as*.
 sīn, conj., *but if*.
 sine, prep. w. abl., *without*.
 singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one*; **SINGLE**, *separate*.
 sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*;
 sinistra, as subst., *the left hand*.
 sive (or seu), conj., *or if; sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), if . . . or if; whether . . . or; either . . . or*.
 socius, -ī (-iī), m., *ally*.
 sōl, sōlis, m., *SUN*.
 solum, -ī, n., *SOIL*.
 solum, adv., *only*; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
 sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *only, alone*.
 spatium, -ī (iī), n., *time, SPACE, distance*.
 spērō, I, *hope, hope for*.
 spēs, speī, f., *hope*.
 sponte, abl. of obsolete spōns, of *one's own accord, voluntarily*.
 statim, adv., *immediately*.
 statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *place; determine; decide; pass judgment*.
 studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager for, desire; give attention*.
 studium, -ī (-iī), n., *zeal, eagerness; enthusiasm*.
 sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under, towards, near, at the foot of*.
 sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *withdraw*.

sub-eō, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -itum, *undergo; approach*.
 subitō, adv., *suddenly*.
 sublātus, pf. ptc. of tollō.
 sub-levō, I, *support, assist*.
 sub-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *send, despatch (help)*.
 sub-sequor, -ī, -secutus, dep., *follow closely*.
 subsidium, -ī (-iī), n., *aid; reinforcements, reserves*.
 sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring up*.
 suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *advance*.
 Suēbī, -ōrum, m., *the Suebi, Swabians*.
 Suessionēs, -um, m., *the Suessiones*.
 suī, sibi, sē, sē, reflex. pron., *self, one's self*.
 Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla*.
 sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *be*.
 summa, -ae, f., **SUM**, *total; control*.
 summus, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of superus, highest, greatest; top of*.
 sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, ASSUME; of punishment, inflict*.
 superior, -ius, adj., *comp. of superus, higher; former*.
 superō, I, *overcome, conquer*.
 super-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *survive*.
 sup-petō, -ere, -īvi (-iī), -itum, *be on hand*.
 suppliciter, adv., **SUPPLIANTLY**.
 supplicium, -ī (-iī), n., *punishment; torture*.
 sup-portō, I, *bring, provide, furnish*.
 sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake*.
 suspiciō, -ōnis, f., **SUSPICION**.
 sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, **SUSTAIN**, *withstand; hold out against siege*.
 sustulī, pf. of tollō.
 suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., reflex., *his, her, its*.

T.

T., abbreviation for *Titus*.
tabula, -ae, f., *TABLET*; *list*.
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be silent*.
tacitus, -a, -um, adj., *silent*.
talis, -e, adj., *such, of such kind*.
tam, adv., *so (of degree)*.
tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless*.
tandem, adv., *at length, at last*.
tantō, adv., *correl. w. quantō, by so much*.
tantopere, adv., *so much, so greatly*.
tantulus, -a, -um, adj., *so small*.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, such; so much*.
tardō, I, *check, RETARD*.
Tasgētius, -ī (-īi), m., *Tasgetius*.
tēlum, -ī, n., *javelin*.
temperantia, -ae, f., *self-control, moderation*.
temperō, I, *refrain*.
tempestās, -tātis, f., *weather; storm*.
temptō, I, *try, test; TEMPT*.
tempus, -oris, n., *time*.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum, *hold*.
terra, -ae, f., *earth, land, country*.
terror, -ōris, m., *TERROR*.
tertius, -a, -um, adj., *third*.
testis, -is, m., *witness*.
Tigurinus, -ī, -um, *Tigurinus*.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid*.
timor, -ōris, m., *fear*.
tolerō, I, *endure*.
tollō, -ere, -sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise; take, take away; destroy; break off; elate*.
Tolōsātēs, -um, m., *the Tolosates*.
tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.
totidem, indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number*.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *all, whole*.
trā-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *hand over, surrender*.
trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across*.
trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, over*.
trāns-eō, -ire, -īvī (-īi), -itum, *cross*.
trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *pierce, TRANSFIX*.

trepidō, I, *be agitated*.
trēs, tria, num. adj., *three*.
Trēverī, -ōrum, m., *the Treveri*.
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *ATTRIBUTE, give credit*.
trīdūm, -ī, n., *three days*.
triplex, -plicis, adj., *TRIPLE*.
tū, tui, pers. pron., *you*.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m., *the Tulingi*.
tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
tumultus, -ūs, m., *TUMULT, confusion*.
tumulus, -ī, m., *small hill*.
turris, -is, f., *TOWER*.
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe (from harm)*.
tuus, -a, -um, possess. pron. and adj., *your, yours*.

U.

ubi, adv., *where; when*.
Ubī, -ōrum, m., *the Ubii*.
ulciscor, -ī, ultus, dep., *punish; avenge*.
ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any*.
ulterior, -ius, adj., *farther*.
ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.
ultrō, adv., *voluntarily*.
umquam, adv., *ever*.
ūnā, adv., *along with*.
unde, adv., *whence*.
undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.
ūnus, -a, -um, adj., *one; only, alone*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
usque, *as far as, even; usque ad, up to, until*.
ūsus, -ūs, m., *USE; advantage; experience*.
ut, conj., *as; that, in order that; so that; w. vbs. of fear, that . . . not*.
ut nōn, neg. result conj., *that . . . not*.
uter, -tra, -trum, adj., *which (of two)*.
uterque, -traque, -trumque, adj., *each; both*.
utī. See *ut*.
ūtor, ūti, ūsus, dep., *USE*.
utrimque, adv., *on both sides*.

utrum, conj., *whether*; utrum . . .
 an, *whether* . . . or.
 uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

V.

vacō, I, *be empty, be* VACANT.
 vadum, -ī, n., *ford*.
 vagor, I, dep., *wander*.
 valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be strong, have power*.
 Valerius, -ī (-iī), m., *Valcrius*.
 vallum, -ī, n., *WALL*.
 vastō, I, *lay WASTE, DEVASTATE, ravage*.
 vectigal, -is, n., *tribute*.
 vehementer, adv., *vigorously, VEHEMENTLY*.
 vel, conj., *or*; vel . . . vel, *either . . . or*.
 Venetī, -orum, m., *the Veneti*.
 veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.
 ventus, -ī, m., *wind*.
 Verbigenus, -ī, m., *Verbigenus*.
 verbum, -ī, m., *word*; pl., *speech*.
 vereor, -ēri, -itus, dep., *fear*.
 Vergobretus, -ī, m., *Vergobret*.
 vērō, adv., *indeed, in truth*.
 Verucloetius, -ī (-iī), m., *Verucloetius*.
 vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true*.
 Vesontio, -ōnis, m., *Vesontio*.
 vesper, -erī, m., *evening*.
 vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., *your, yours*.
 veterānus, -a, -um, adj., *VETERAN*.
 vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid*.

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, ancient*.
 vexō, I, *harass, annoy*; VEX.
 via, -ae, f., *WAY, road*.
 victōria, -ae, f., *VICTORY*.
 vicus, -ī, m., *village*.
 videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum, *see*.
 videor, -ēri, vīsus, dep., *seem*.
 vigilia, -ae, f., *watch*: the night was divided into four *watches*.
 vīginti, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY*.
 vincō, -ere, vicī, victum, *conquer*.
 vinculum, -ī, m., *bond, fetter*.
 vinea, -ae, f., *shed for the protection of besiegers*.
 vinum, -ī, n., *WINE*.
 vir, virī, m., *man*.
 virēs, pl. of vīs.
 virtūs, -tūtis, f., *courage, valor*; VIRTUE.
 vīs, vīs, f., *force*; pl., vīrēs, -ium, *strength*.
 vīta, -ae, f., *life*.
 vitō, I, *shun, avoid*.
 vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *alive*.
 vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty*.
 vocō, I, *call*.
 Vocontii, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii*.
 volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish*.
 voluntās, -tātis, f., *consent*; good *will*; *wish*.
 Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus*.
 vōs, pl. of tū.
 vōx, vōcis, f., *VOICE*; *cry*.
 vulgus, -ī, n., *the common people*.
 vulnerō, I, *wound*.
 vulnus, -eris, n., *wound*.

ENGLISH=LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

abandon, *relinquō*.
 (be) able, *possum*.
 about (w. numerals), *ad*; (= concerning) *dē*.
 acceptable, *acceptus*.
 access, *aditus*.
 (on) account of, *propter*.
 across, *trāns*.
 advance, *prōcēdō*.
 against, *ad*; *contrā*; *in*.
 aid, *auxilium*.
 all, *omnis*; *tōtus*.
 ally, *socius*.
 almost, *ferē*; *paene*.
 alone, *sōlus*.
 already, *iam*.
 also, *et*; *quoque*.
 although, *cum*.
 always, *semper*.
 am, *sum*.
 ambassador, *lēgātus*.
 among, *apud*; *in*; *inter*.
 and, *ac*, *atque*, *et*; *-que*.
 and not, *nec*, *neque*.
 announce, *nūntiō*.
 annoy, *vexō*.
 another, *alius*; (of two) *alter*.
 any, *aliquis*; *ūllus*; (after *sī*) *quis*.
 appoint, *creō*.
 approach, *aditus*.
 approve of, *probō*.
 arms (weapons), *arma*.
 army, *exercitus*.
 arrival, *adventus*.
 arrive, *pervenio*.
 ask, *petō*; *quaerō*; *rogō*.
 assault, *oppugnō*.
 assistance, *subsidium*.
 at (throw at), *in*.

attack (of places), *oppugnō*; (of persons), *aggredior*.
 attack, *impetus*.
 at once, *statim*.
 authority, *auctōritās*.
 auxiliaries, *auxilia*.
 avoid, *vītō*.
 await, *expectō*.

B.

baggage, *impedimenta*.
 bank (of stream), *rīpa*.
 battle, *proelium*.
 battle line, *aciēs*.
 be, *esse*.
 beautiful, *pulcher*.
 because, *quod*; *cum*.
 because of, *causā*; *propter*.
 before (prep.), *ante*; *prō*.
 before (conj.), *priusquam*.
 beg, *implōrō*; *petō*.
 began, *coepi*.
 beginning, *initium*.
 behind, *post*.
 belief, *opiniō*.
 benefit, *prōsum*.
 besiege, *oppugnō*.
 best, *optimus*.
 betake one's self, *sē recipere*.
 better (adj.), *melior*; (adv.), *melius*.
 between, *inter*.
 be between, *intercēdō*; *intersum*.
 boat, *nāvis*.
 body, *corpus*.
 boldly, *audācter*.
 booty, *praeda*.
 boundaries, *finēs* (pl.).
 brave, *fortis*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.

break off (= interrupt), *tollō*.
 bridge, *pōns*.
 bring, *ferō*; *portō*.
 bring about, *efficiō*.
 bring back, *redūcō*.
 bring in, *importō*.
 bring upon, *inferō*.
 build, *faciō*.
 burn, *incendō*.
 but, *sed*.
 but (= except), *nisi*.
 by, *ā*, *ab*.

C.

call, *appellō*, *vocō*.
 call together, *convocō*.
 camp, *castra* (pl.).
 can, *possum*.
 capture, *capio*.
 care, *diligentia*.
 carry, *portō*.
 carry back word, *renūntiō*.
 carry on (war), *bellum gerere*.
 cast, *prōiciō*.
 cavalry, *equitēs* (pl.); *equitātus*.
 (a) certain, *quidam*.
 check, *tardō*.
 chief, *princeps*.
 choose, *dēligō*.
 circumstance, *rēs*.
 citizen, *civis*.
 city, *urbs*.
 clamor, *clāmor*.
 clear (away), *nūdō*.
 coast, *litus*.
 cohort, *cohors*.
 cold, *frīgus*.
 column (of men), *agmen*.
 come, *veniō*.
 come back, *redeō*; *revertor*.
 come together, *conveniō*.
 coming, *adventus*.
 command, *mando*; *iubeō*, *imperō*.
 (be in) command, *praesum*.
 (put in) command, *praeeficio*.
 commander, *imperātor*.
 common, *commūnis*.
 compel, *cōgō*.
 complain, *queror*.
 conference, *colloquium*.
 conquer, *superō*; *vincō*.

consider, *cōgitō*.
 consul, *cōsul*.
 contend, *contendō*.
 contrary to, *contrā*; *praeter*.
 convoke, *convocō*.
 council, *concilium*.
 courage, *animus*; *virtus*.
 crops, *frūmenta*.
 cross, *trānseō*.
 custom, *mōs*.

D.

danger, *periculum*.
 dangerous, *periculōsus*.
 dare, *audeō*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *diēs*.
 deep, *altus*.
 defeat, *superō*; *vincō*.
 defend, *dēfendō*.
 defender, *dēfēnsor*.
 deliberate, *dēliberō*.
 deliver (a speech), *habeō*.
 demand, *postulō*.
 depart, *abeō*.
 depth, *altitūdō*.
 desire (for), *studium*.
 determine, *cōstituō*.
 differ, *differō*.
 difficult, *difficilis*.
 (with) difficulty, *vix*.
 disaster, *calamitās*.
 discover, *explōrō*.
 (be) distant, *absum*.
 disturb, *perturbō*.
 divide, *dīvidō*.
 do, *faciō*.
 doubt, *dubitō*.
 doubt, *dubium*.
 draw up, *instruō*.
 drive, *agō*; *pellō*.
 duty, *officium*.

E.

each, *quisque*.
 each other (third pers.), *inter sē*.
 (be) eager for, *studeō*; also in
 sense "fond of," *cupidus esse*.
 earthwork, *agger*.
 easily, *facile*.

easy, *facilis*.
 encourage, *cōfirmō*.
 end, *finis*.
 endure, *perferō*; *subeō*.
 enemy, *hostis*.
 enlist, *cōscribō*.
 enormous, *ingēns*.
 enthusiasm, *studium*.
 entire, *tōtus*.
 entrust, *mandō*.
 envoy, *légātus*.
 escape, *prōfugiō*.
 establish, *cōfirmō*.
 even, *etiam*; *quidem*.
 evident, *cōstat*.
 expect, *expectō*.
 explore, *explōro*.
 exposed, *apertus*.
 express (opinion), *iūdicō*.
 express (thanks), *grātiās agere*.
 extend, *pertineō*.

F.

fail, *dēsum*.
 far, *longē*.
 (as) far as, *quantum (loci)*.
 farmer, *agricola*.
 farther (adj.), *ulterior*.
 farther (adv.), *longius*.
 favor, *studeō*.
 favor, *beneficium, gratia*.
 fear, *timeō*; *vereor*.
 fear, *timor*.
 field, *ager*.
 fierce, *ācer*.
 fiercely, *ācriter*.
 fight, *pugnō*.
 find, *inveniō*; *reperiō*.
 find out, *explōrō*.
 finish, *perficiō*.
 first (adj.), *primus*.
 first (adv.), *primum*.
 five, *quīque*.
 flank, *latus*.
 flee, *fugiō*.
 flight, *fuga*.
 follow, *sequor*.
 follow closely, *subsequor*.
 folly, *āmentia*.
 foot, *pēs*.
 (at) foot of, *sub*.

for (conj.), *nam*; (prep.), *ad*; *prō*.
 forced march, *magnum iter*.
 forces, *cōpia*.
 ford, *vadum*.
 forest, *silva*.
 formerly, *quondam*.
 fort, *castellum*.
 fortification, *mūnitiō*.
 fortify, *mūniō*.
 fortune, *fortūna*.
 four, *quattuor*.
 fourth, *quartus*.
 free, *liber*.
 friend, *amicus*.
 friendship, *amicitia*.
 frighten, *perterreō*.
 from (away from), *ā, ab*; (out of),
 ē, ex; (down from), *dē*; (with
 verb phrase), *quīn*.
 (in) front of, *ante*; *prō*.

G.

garrison, *praesidium*.
 gate, *porta*.
 gift, *dōnum*.
 give, *dō*.
 give up, *trādō*.
 go, *eō*.
 going to, etc., use fut. periph.
 go out, *exeō*.
 good, *bonus*.
 goods, *bona* (often omitted w.
 neut. possess. pron.).
 grain, *frūmentum*.
 great, *magnus*.
 (as) great as, *quantus*.
 (so) great, *tantus*.
 greatly, *magnopere*.
 (very) greatly, *maximē*.
 guard, *praesidium*.
 guide, *dux*.
 guiltless, *purgātus*.

H.

happen, *accidō*; *fiō*.
 harbor, *portus*.
 hardship, *labor*.
 hasten, *contendō*; *mātūrō*.
 hate, *ōdī*.

have, **habeō**.
 have (a thing done), **cūrō**.
 he (often), **is**.
 hear, **audiō**.
 height, **altitūdō**.
 hem in, **contineō**.
 hesitate, **dubitō**.
 high, **altus**.
 hill, **collis**.
 himself (reflex), **sē**; (intensive).
 See *self*.
 hinder, **impediō**.
 his (her, etc.) (reflex), **suus**; (not reflex), gen. of **is**.
 hold, **habeō**; **occupō**; **teneō**.
 hold back, **contineō**.
 hold in check, **contineō**.
 hold out, **sustineō**.
 home (motion), **domum**.
 (at) home, **domi**.
 (from) home, **domō**.
 hope, **spēs**.
 horse, **equus**.
 hostage, **obsēs**.
 hour, **hōra**.
 house, **domus**.
 however, **autem**.

I.

I, **ego**.
 if, **sī**.
 immediately, **statim**.
 impede, **impediō**.
 import, **importō**.
 in, **in**.
 indeed, **etiam**; **quidem**.
 induce, **adducō**; **inducō**.
 infantry, **peditēs** (pl.).
 influence, **adducō**; **inducō**.
 inform, **certiorem facere**.
 (be) informed, **certior fieri**.
 inhabitant, **incola**.
 injury, **iniūria**.
 inquire, **quaerō**.
 insult, **contumēlia**.
 intend, use fut. periph.; also in **animō esse** with dat. of person and infin.
 into, **in**.
 island, **insula**.

J.

javelin, **tēlum**.
 join battle, **proelium committere**.

K.

keep away (— off), **prohibeō**.
 keep in, **contineō**.
 kill, **necō**; **interficiō**.
 kind, **genus**.
 king, **rēx**.
 know, **sciō**; **intellegō**.

L.

land, **ager**.
 language, **lingua**.
 large, **magnus**.
 lay waste, **vastō**.
 lead, **agō**; **dūcō**.
 lead back, **redūcō**.
 leave, **relinquō**.
 left, **sinister**.
 legion, **legiō**.
 less (adv.), **minus**.
 letter, **litterae** (pl.).
 liberty, **libertās**.
 lieutenant, **lēgātus**.
 (a) little (adv.), **paulō**.
 locate, **collocō**.
 location, **locus**.
 long (adj.), **longus**.
 long (adv.), **longē**.
 long (adv. of time), **diū**.
 (as) long as, **quamdiū**.
 look back, **respiciō**.
 lose, **dimitto**.
 love, **amō**.

M.

make, **faciō**.
 make war, **bellum inferre**.
 man, **vir**; **homō**.
 many, **multi**.
 march (noun), **iter**.
 march (verb), **iter facere**.
 may (= permission), **licet**.
 memory, **memoria**.
 message, **nūntius**.
 messenger, **nūntius**.

middle, *medius*.
 mile, *mille passūs* (pl.).
 miles, *mīlia passuum*.
 military matters, *rēs militāris*.
 mind, *animus*.
 moat, *fossa*.
 month, *mēnsis*.
 more (n. adj. used subst.), *plūs*.
 more (adv.), *amplius* (of number);
 magis (of degree).
 mountain, *mōns*.
 much (adj.), *multus*.
 much (adv.), *multō*; *multum*.
 must, use pass. periph.; also
 oportet.
 my, *meus*.

N.

name, *nōmen*.
 narrow, *angustus*.
 narrow pass, *angustiae*.
 nature, *nātūra*.
 near, *ad*; *prope*.
 nearest, *proximus*.
 neighbor, *finitimus*.
 never, *numquam*.
 nevertheless, *tamen*.
 new, *novus*.
 next, *proximus*.
 next day, *postridiē*.
 night, *nox*.
 no (adj. of number), *nūllus*.
 no (of quantity), *nihil*.
 no one, *nēmō*.
 not, *nōn*, in assertions and ques-
 tions; elsewhere, *nē*.
 not at all, *nihil*.
 not even, *nē . . . quidem*.
 not only . . . but also, *nōn solum*
 . . . *sed etiam*.
 not yet, *nōndum*.
 nothing, *nihil*.
 now, *nunc*; *iam*.
 number, *numerus*.

O.

obtain, *obtinēō*.
 occupy, *occupō*.
 of (= about), *dē*.

often, *saepe*.
 on, *in*.
 on account of, *propter*.
 once, *quondam*.
 one, *ūnus*.
 one . . . another, *alius . . . alius*.
 one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter*.
 only, *omninō*; *solum*.
 open, *apertus*.
 opinion, *opiniō*.
 order, *iubeō*; *imperō*.
 other, *alius*; (of two) *alter*.
 ought, *debeō*.
 our, *noster*.
 our men, *nostrī*.
 out of, *ē*, *ex*.
 over (of authority), *in w. acc.*
 over (across), *trāns*.
 overcome, *superō*.

P.

pack animal, *iumentum*.
 part, *pars*.
 pass (of mountains), *angustiae*.
 peace, *pāx*.
 people, *populus*.
 perform, *praestō*.
 permit, *patior*.
 persuade, *persuadeō*.
 pitch camp, *castra ponere*.
 place, *locus*.
 plan, *cōsiliū*.
 plunder, *praeda*.
 popularity, *grātia*.
 possess, *habeō*.
 (get) possession of, *potior*.
 power, *potestās*.
 (be) powerful, *plūrimum posse*.
 praise, *laudō*.
 praise, *laus*.
 prefer, *mālō*.
 prepare, *parō*; *comparō*.
 prevent, *prohibeō*; *dēterreō*.
 proceed, *prōcēdō*.
 procure, *parō*; *comparō*.
 protection, *fidēs*; *praesidium*.
 province, *prōvincia*.
 (for the) purpose of, *causā*.
 put in command, *praeficiō*.
 put to flight, *in fugam dare*.

Q.

quantity, *numerus*.
quicker than they thought, *celer-*
ius opiniōne.
quickly, *celeriter*.
quite, *maximē*.

R.

race, *genus*.
rampart, *agger*.
rank, *ordō*.
rather, *potius*.
ravage, *vastō*.
reach, *adeō*.
rear, *novissimum agmen*.
reason, *ratio*; *rēs*; *causā*.
(for) reasons of my own, *meō*
nōmine.
refuse, *recūsō*.
remain, *maneo*.
remaining (adj.), *reliquus*.
remarkable, *ēgregius*; *insignis*.
render, *reddō*.
report, *nūntiō*; *renūntiō*.
report, *fāma*; *rūmor*.
resolve, *cōstituō*.
rest of, *reliquus*.
restrain, *retineō*.
retire, *sē recipere*.
retreat, *pedem referre*.
return, *redeō*; *revertor*.
revolt, *dēficiō*.
revolution, *rēs novae*.
right, *dexter*.
right of way, *iter*.
ripe, *mātūrus*.
river, *flūmen*.
road, *iter*; *via*.
route, *iter*.

S.

safe, *incolumis*; *tūtus*.
safety, *salūs*.
sail, *nāvigō*.
sailor, *nauta*.
(for the) sake of, *causā*.
same, *idem*.
scarcely, *vix*.
scout, *explōrātor*.
sea, *mare*.
see, *videō*.

seek, *petō*; *quaerō*.
seem, *videor*.
seize, *occupō*.
select, *dēligō*.
self (intensive, all persons), *ipse*.
senate, *senātus*.
send, *mittō*.
send forward, *praemittō*.
separate, *dividō*.
servitude, *servitūs*.
set out, *proficīscor*.
severe, *ācer*.
severely, *ācriter*.
sharp, *ācer*.
ship, *nāvis*.
ship of war, *nāvis longa*.
show, *ostendō*.
shun, *vītō*.
side, *latus*; *pars*.
(on all) sides, *undique*.
sight, *cōspectus*.
since, *cum*.
size, *magnitūdō*.
skilled, *peritus*.
slay, *interficiō*.
small, *parvus*.
so, *ita*; *sic*; *tam*.
soldier, *miles*.
some, *nōnnūllus*.
some one, *aliquis*.
son, *filius*.
soon as possible, *quam primum*.
spear, *pīlum*; *tēlum*.
speech, *ōrātiō*; *verba* (pl.).
speed, *celeritās*.
state, *civitās*.
station, *collocō*; *cōstituō*.
stay, *maneo*.
stone, *lapis*.
storm (attack), *expugnō*.
strength, *virēs* (pl.).
(be) strong, *valeō*.
stronghold, *oppidum*.
subdue, *superō*.
such (adj.), *tālis*.
suitable, *idōneus*.
summon, *convocō*.
sunset, *sōlis occāsus*.
supplies, *commeātus*.
surpass, *superō*.
swift, *celer*.
sword, *gladius*.

T.

take, *capiō*.
 take away, *tollō*.
 take by storm, *expugnō*.
 take flight, *sē fugae mandāre*.
 tell, *dicō*; *nūntiō*.
 tenth, *decimus*.
 territory, *ager*; *finēs* (pl.).
 than, *quam*.
 that (pron.), *ille*.
 that (of yours), *iste*.
 that, in order that, *ut*; neg., *nē*.
 that, so . . . that, *ut*; neg., *ut nōn*.
 that (after *fear*), *nē*; neg., *ut*.
 that (after *doubt*), *quīn*.
 the . . . the (in correlative sentences), *quō* . . . *eō*; *quantō* . . . *tantō*.
 then, *inde*; *tum*.
 there, *ibi*.
 thing, *rēs*.
 think, *cōgitō*; *existimō*; *putō*.
 this, *hīc*.
 though, *cum*.
 thousand, *mille*.
 three, *trēs*.
 through, *per*.
 throw, *coniciō*.
 time, *tempus*.
 to (motion), *ad*.
 top of (adj.), *summus*.
 toward, *ad*.
 tower, *turris*.
 town, *oppidum*.
 tribe, *gēns*.
 troops, *cōpiae*.
 trouble, *perturbō*.
 try, *cōnor*.
 twelve, *duodecim*.
 two, *duo*.
 two hundred, *ducenti*.

U.

unencumbered, *expeditus*.
 until, *dum*.
 urge, *incitō*; *hortor*.
 urge on, *incito*.
 use, *utor*.
 utmost, *maximus*; *summus*.

V.

(in) vain, *frustrā*.
 valiant, *fortis*.
 valor, *virtūs*.
 very, usually express by superl.
 very greatly, *maximē*.
 very much, *maximē*.
 victory, *victoriā*.
 vigorous, *ācer*.
 village, *vīcus*.
 visit, *adeō*.

W.

wage war, *bellum gerere*.
 wagon, *carrus*.
 wait, *moror*.
 wait for, *expectō*.
 wall, *vallum*.
 want, *volō*.
 war, *bellum*.
 warn, *moneō*.
 war ship, *nāvis longa*.
 what. See *who*.
 when, *cum*; *ubi*.
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *sī*; *ūtrum*; *num*.
 which (of two), *uter*.
 while, *dum*.
 who, which, what (rel.), *quī*.
 who, which, what (interrog.), *quis*.
 whole, *tōtus*.
 why, *cur*; *quārē*.
 wine, *vīnum*.
 wing (of army), *cornū*.
 winter quarters, *hiberna* (pl.).
 wish, *volō*.
 (not to) wish, *nōlō*.
 wish rather, *mālō*.
 with, *cum*.
 without, *sine*.
 withstand, *sustineō*.
 work, *opus*.
 wound, *vulnerō*.
 wound, *vulnus*.

Y.

year, *annus*.
 yield, *cēdō*.
 you, *tū*.
 your, *tuus*; *vester*.

INDEX.

A

Ablative: abl. case, 31; abl. of cause, manner, accompaniment, 340; means, instrument, agent, attendant circumstance, 344; with certain deponents, 348; respect or specification, 349; with comparatives, degree of difference, 353; quality, 357; separation, 358; place and time, 362; source, price, with *opus*, with adjectives, 366; absolute, 369.

Accent, 8.

Accusative: acc. case, 31; acc. of direct object, object and predicate, with compounds of *trāns*, person and thing, 309; extent—time, space, power or degree, 313; limit, 314.

Adjectives: classes, 78; used substantively, 81; declined, 79, 85, 148; irregular, 139; in *-er* distinguished, 147; of 1, 2, and 3 terminations, 145; comparison, 158–165; of position, 166, 374; agreement, 80, 373.

Adverbs: formation, 170; comparison, 171.

Agreement: defined, 46; attributive and predicate, 69; verb with subject, 47; appositives, 73; adjectives, 80, 373; relative, 192.

an, 382.

B

Base, 35.

C

Case, 31.

Case endings: 32; 35; 36; 41; 52; 102; 129; 133.

Case terminations, 35.

Causal clauses: 245, C, 2; 422.

Command, 380.

Comparison: adj., 158–165; adv., 171.

Concessive clauses: 245, C, 3; 423.

Conditional sentences: 427–429; future, 433; table of, 434.

Conjugations, 20, see *Verbs*.

Correlation, 376.

cum (conj.): 245; 418; 422; 423.

cum primum, 418.

D

Dative: dat. case, 31; indirect object, with intransitives, with compound verbs, 318; reference, with adjectives, 322; possessor, purpose, or service, agent, 326.

Declension: defined, 10; classified, 33, 34; first, 41–44; second, 52–54, 58; third—stems, 102–104; mute stems, 105, 106; liquid and nasal stems, 110, 111; spirant stems, 115–117; *i* stems, 121–124; fourth, 129–132; fifth, 133, 134.

Deponent verbs, 266–268.

Direct cases, 31, b.

Doubt, 413.

dum, 418.

E

Enclitics, 184, n. 3.

F

Fear clauses: 270; 414.

Finite forms of verb, 13.

Future: 95; 97; 152.

G

Genitive: gen. case, 31; gen. with nouns—possessive, partitive, material or composition, subjective, objective, attributive, 330; quality, measure, 334; with adjectives, 335; predicate, with verbs of remembering and forgetting, with impersonals, interest, indefinite value, 339.

Gerund and Gerundive: form, 218, c; 228, b; syntax, 388–390.

Government, 46.

H

Hindrance, 413.

Historical infinitive, 384, c.

Historical perfect, 209.

Historical present, 235, I, e.

I

Imperative, 217.

Imperfect: 94; 97.

Impersonal verbs: 302–304.

Indirect discourse: 438–445.

Infinitive: 21; 218, b; 228, c, d, e; 384.

Inflection, 10.

Interrogative particles, 194.

Irregular verbs: 280–304.

L

Locative case, 135.

M

Modifiers, 67.

N

nē: 234; 270; 380; 399; 413; 414.

-ne: 194; 382.

necne, 382.

Negatives: 381; 398; 408.

Nominative: 31; 308.

nonne, 194.

num, 194.

Numerals: 175, 176.

O

Objects: defined, 46; direct, see *Accusative*; indirect, see *Dative*.

Oblique cases, 31, b.

ōrātiō obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.

P

Participles: form, 218, a; 228; syntax, 367–369.

Particles, 9.

Perfect system, 209.

Periphrastics: form, 274–276; syntax, 326, V.

Personal endings: 22; 210; 217; 227.

postquam, 418.

potior, 348.

Prepositions: 59–60; Appendix A.

Present system, 96.

Preteritive verbs, 294.

Prevention, 413.

Primary tenses, 235, I.

Principal parts, 208.

priusquam, 418.

Prohibition, 380.

Pronominal adjectives: 139–141.

Pronouns: defined and classified, 180; form, 181–182; 186; 187; 191–193; 198; 201; syntax, 192; 375.

Purpose: 234; 399; 403.

Q

Quantity: 5, 6.

Questions: direct, 194; single and double, 382; indirect, 444.

quā, 413.

quoad, 418.

quod, 422.

quōminus, 413.

R

Refusal, 413.

Relative pronoun: 191, 192.

Relative sentence: 449, 450.

Result: 240; 407.

S

- Secondary tenses, 235, I.
 Semi-deponent verbs, 269.
 Sentence, 45.
 Sequence of tenses, 235.
simul ac, 418.
 Sounds: 1-4.
 Stems: verb, 16-19; 205, 206; 230;
 noun, 32, 33; 102-105; 110;
 115; 121-123.
 Subject: of finite verb, 47, a; of
 infinitive, 384, II.
 Subjunctive: nature and formation,
 215, 216; syntax: independent,
 215; 383; hortatory, jussive,
 optative or volitive, potential,
 383; dependent, 234; 240; 245;
 270; purpose, 234; 399; result,
 240; 407; appositive and ex-
 planatory, 412; doubt, hin-
 drance, prevention, refusal,
 413; fear, 414; time, 245; 418;
 cause, 245; 422; concession,
 245; 423; conditions, 429, II;
 433, II; indirect discourse,
 439; 445; indirect questions,
 444; in relative sentence, 449,
 450.
 Substantive clauses, 395, II.
 Supine: form, 218, d; syntax, 391;
 403, IV.

T

- Temporal clauses: 245, C, 1; 418.
 Tenses: 12; 14; primary and sec-
 ondary, 235, I; historical, 209;
 235, I, e; meaning—present,
 23, a; imperfect, 94; future, 95;
 perfect, 209, a; pluperfect,
 209, b; future perfect, 209, c;
 formation—indicative tenses,
 23, b; 97, a; 97, b; 152, b; 210,
 a; 210, b; 210, c; subjunctive,
 216; imperative, 217; passive,
 227.
 Tense signs: 16; 97; 152; 210; 216.

U

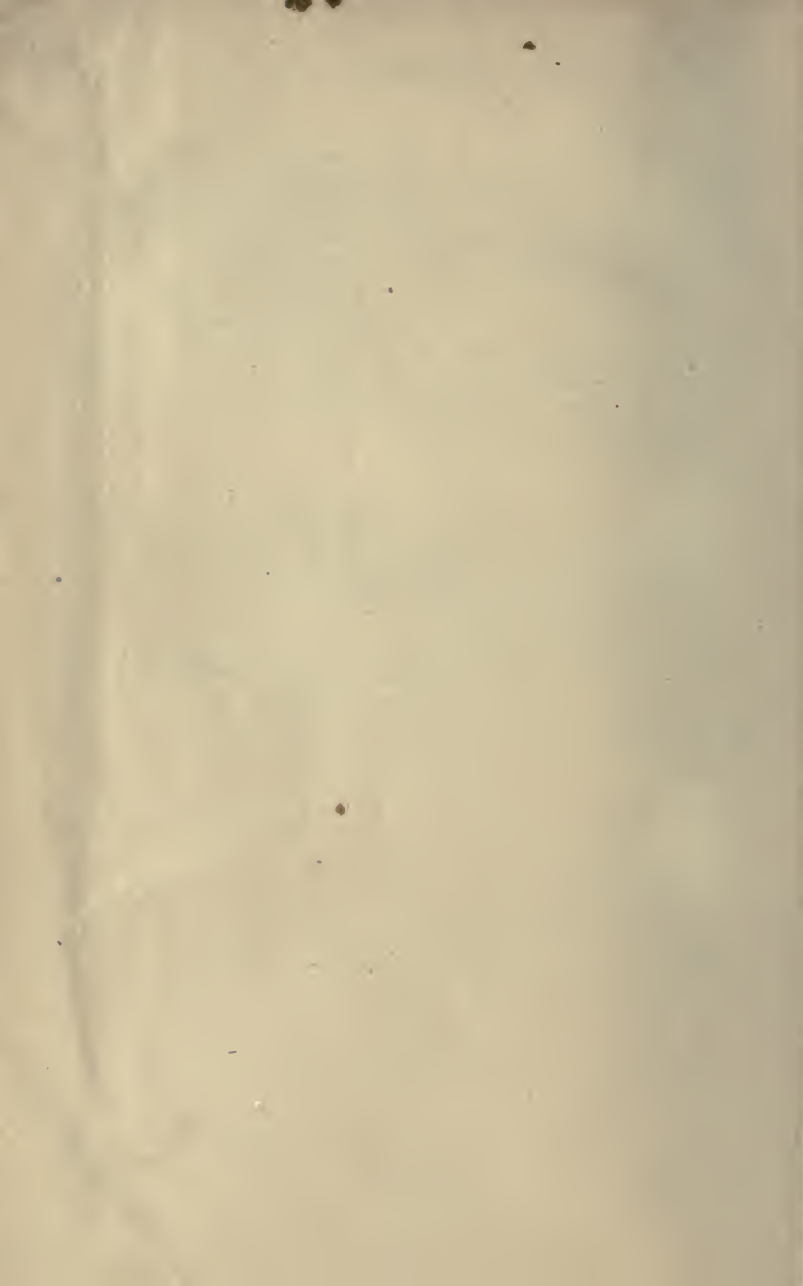
- ubi*, 418.
ut, 234, 399; 240, 407; 270, 414.
uti, see *ut*.
utor, 348.
utrum, 382.

V

- Verbs: 11-24; 90; 94-98; 152-154;
 205-304.

W

- Wish, 383.



RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

2-month loans may be renewed by calling

(415) 642-6753

1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books
to NRLF

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days
prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

AUG 09 1991

YB 41188

249123

249123

